This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

**Usage guidelines**

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

**About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

# METHOD IN HISTORY

WILLIAM H. MACE

H 4538.97

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY

FROM THE LIBRARY OF
ALBERT E. WINSHIP, LITT.D., LL.D.
EDITOR OF THE NEW ENGLAND JOURNAL
OF EDUCATION

RECEIVED OCTOBER 3, 1921

This book was stolen from
Harvard College Library.
It was later recovered.
The thief was sentenced to
two years at hard labor.
1932

# METHOD IN HISTORY

# METHOD IN HISTORY

## FOR TEACHERS AND STUDENTS

by

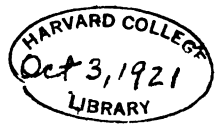
WILLIAM H. MACE

Chicago

Rand McNally & company

1914

H 4538.97




Library of A. E. Winship

# THE CONTENTS


PAGE

*The Prefatory Note* . . . . . 1
*The Preface* . . . . . 2
*The Introduction* . . . . . 3
**The General Nature of History and the Processes Involved in the Organization of Historical Material** . . . . . 9
ESSENTIAL ELEMENTS OF HISTORY . . . . . 9
PROCESSES INVOLVED IN ORGANIZING HISTORY . . . 25
The Process of Interpretation . . . . . 27
Nature and Kinds . . . . . 27
Forms of Thought and Sentiment as Discovered in Interpretation . . . . . 32
Material Presented for Interpretation . . . 46
The Educational Value of Interpretation . . . 50
The Process of Coördination . . . . . 65
Nature of the Process . . . . . 65
Educational Value of Coördination . . . . 72
**Organization of the Phases of American History** . . . . 75
PERIOD OF THE GROWTH OF LOCAL INSTITUTIONS . . 75
The Relation of Discoveries and Explorations to This Period . . . . . 75
The Period as a Whole . . . . . 78
The Diffusion of Rights and Privileges . . . . . 81
Centralization of Rights and Opportunities . . . 86
The Middle Colonies . . . . . 93
PERIOD OF THE GROWTH OF UNION . . . . . 96
The Period as a Whole . . . . . 96
Union against England . . . . . 101
Union of the States by Means of the General Government . . . . . 113
PERIOD OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF NATIONALITY . . . 128
The Period as a Whole . . . . . 128
RELATIONS BETWEEN NATIONALITY AND DEMOCRACY . . 131
A Period of Conflict . . . . . 131
Mutual Approach of Nationality and Democracy . . 146
The Fusion of Nationality and Democracy Working Out Its Results . . . . . 162

PAGE

NATIONALITY AND SLAVERY . . . . . 173
Development of the Conflict . . . . . 173
The Growth of Sectionalization . . . . . 180
The Destruction of Slavery and the Triumph of the Nation. . . . . 197
THE PERIOD OF CONSOLIDATION AND EXPANSION . . 209

**The Elementary Phases of History Teaching** . . . . . 213
THE SENSE PHASE OF HISTORY . . . . . 213
The General Problem . . . . . 213
How the Problem Changes . . . . . 213
Nature of Observation Work in History . . . . 214
THE PICTURE-MAKING PHASE OF HISTORY . . . . 224
The General Problem . . . . . 224
The Material for Picture Making . . . . . 228
Patriotic Anniversaries . . . . . 228
Myth, Legend, Folklore . . . . . 231
The Transitional Story . . . . . 232
The Indian Story . . . . . 235
The Real Hero . . . . . 237
Ethical Value of Hero Story . . . . . 241
The Teacher as a Story Teller . . . . . 244
The Oral and the Written Story . . . . . 246
European-American History—Sixth Grade . . . 249
The Seventh and Eighth Grades . . . . . 253
The Objects of the Story of the Event . . . 254
The Material for the Story of the Event . . . 256
Story of the Event, or Word-Pictures taken from Mace's School History . . . . . 261

**History in the High School** . . . . . 279
IMPROVING THE HISTORY COURSE . . . . . 279
Report of the Committee of Seven . . . . . 279
Report of the Committee of Five . . . . . 280
Report of the Committee on Social Studies . . . 281
What the Final Report Will Probably Be . . . . 283
Practical Suggestions . . . . . 285
The First Year . . . . . 285
The Second Year's Work . . . . . 288
The Third Year . . . . . 289
The Fourth Year . . . . . 291

# A PREFATORY NOTE

This book was not made to order, but grew out of an effort, extending over several years, to justify the study of the Pedagogy of History in a University Normal School. Out of almost daily conferences over the problems of general and special method arose the germs of that masterful work, *The Philosophy of Teaching*, by Prof. Arnold Tompkins, University of Illinois, and of the present volume, "Method in History." It is particularly gratifying to me that this work, in passing through the press, has again had the benefit of Professor Tompkins' deep insight into the problem of teaching. The general principles of the book have had also the great benefit of being reviewed by Superintendent Lewis H. Jones, Cleveland, Ohio, and by President E. Benjamin Andrews, Brown University.

I am deeply indebted to Prof. Cyrus W. Hodgin, Earlham College, not only for friendly encouragement while developing the work, but particularly for generous and valuable service in the criticism of both its form and content. I desire, also, to express my obligation to Prof. Moses Coit Tyler, Cornell University, for the exceptional privilege of working out a portion of the book in his Historical Seminar, and for his scholarly and sympathetic criticisms. Finally, the work has profited by the careful proof-reading of Mr. Herbert P. Gallinger, Fellow in History, Amherst College.

W. H. M.

*Syracuse University,*
*March 10, 1896.*

# THE PREFACE

"Method in History" has been favorably received by teachers in all grades of school work. Scores of them have declared that it gave their history teaching a deeper meaning and a fresh impulse.

In this present edition, the volume has been thoroughly revised and in several parts entirely rewritten in order to embody the progress made in history teaching.

The first part of the work, the "General Nature of History," or the logical view of History, has been modified slightly in order consciously to bring out the idea that problems in history are solved when they are purposely made to explain the present.

The elementary part, the psychological view, has been rewritten and several phases have been added. Among these are the relation of geography and literature to history in their beginnings, the outline of patriotic days, illustrations of how elementary history stories may be classified, the recommendation of the American Historical Association as to European History in the Sixth Grade, the discussion of "The Oral and Written Story," illustrations of "Stories of Events" drawn from Mace's School History, and "Improving the High School Course in History," including the reports of the "Committee of Seven," the "Committee of Five," and the "Committee on Social Studies." The report of the Committee on Social Studies includes suggestions as to modernizing history with the intent to make it more practical and hence more interesting. Finally, a brief statement of "Practical Suggestions" in regard to the High School History Course has been added.

WILLIAM H. MACE.

*Syracuse University,*
*August 1, 1914.*

# THE INTRODUCTION

I well know the danger that argues against wrenching a subject to make it support a preconceived theory. Efforts have been made to avoid this, and thus escape error and reach the truth. However, certain general principles of education have been present from the beginning, and have been either confirmed or modified by the investigation. It is now proposed to indicate the nature of the problem attacked and explain the method of its solution.

To state the matter negatively, the aim has not been to discuss devices and external manipulations in teaching history; the term "method" is not even intended to suggest diagrams, chronological charts, or expedients of like nature. But something far more fundamental has been the aim: the determining factors in method and not the determined—the principal and not the accidental —ones have been sought for and put to work at the problem. Whether diagrams, outlines, maps, and so on are to be used in teaching history cannot be decided by the whim of the teacher or by some current fashion in teaching the subject, but is to be decided, like other questions about devices and expedients, by an appeal to principles.

It has been held in mind that education is an organic process carried on by the coöperation of two forces: mind, with its powers, processes, and products; and subject, with its real or possible system of principles and facts. No necessity exists here for the discussion of the unsettled problem concerning the identity or non-identity of mind

and subject; it is sufficient to know that in the educative process, conscious or unconscious, there is such a correspondence and coöperation between the two factors that changes are wrought in one of the factors,—mind; and we often speak of the subject as being changed from crude facts into some sort of system. In any event, the mind of the learner becomes educated—its possibilities made realities—by possessing the thought of the subject.

In the process of learning the mind is conscious of the thing it thinks and not of its own subjective processes. In the process of teaching the learning mind is led and directed in its efforts to come into contact with the content of things. The teaching act involves another act of correspondence and coöperation; the mind of the teacher and the mind of the learner coöperate in this act; the learner, as before stated, being conscious only of his subject, while the teacher is conscious of the learner's thinking of the subject. The teacher either is or is not directing a mental process. If he is, then his conscious attention must rest upon that process. The subject presents the common ground where the teaching mind and the learning mind meet. The subject itself is the product of a series of mental processes; it is a sort of mental formula which expresses the experience of the minds that have wrought it out. In order, therefore, to direct the student mind in its creation of the subject, the teacher must first have analyzed it into its mental processes and products.

The above are fundamental facts of method in teaching.[1] They are some of the determining principles upon which the so-called "methods" of teaching rest. To these must appeal be made in deciding what devices shall be used, questions asked, or directions given. How can a teacher

[1] The teaching process is fully elaborated and illustrated in Tompkins' *Philosophy of Teaching.*

know, for a certainty, what general devices are usable in any subject, without knowing the general forms of activity the subject calls forth? How can a teacher prepare for the work of each day who cannot forecast the thinking and feeling to be aroused?

The above factors are valuable as correctives of experience; they are above experience, for they inhere in the nature of the teaching act. Experience makes mistakes, and therefore is not the only guide, but must itself be guided. Following the experience of others may be mere imitation and make one the slave of forms, while teaching under the guidance of principles gives inspiration and confers freedom.

The analysis of a subject into its mental process not only forms the basis for any rational discussion of the devices to be used in stimulating the learning mind, but such an analysis also forms the true basis for a discussion of the subject's educational value. The platitudes on educational values might well be exchanged for a critical analysis of the processes stimulated and the products created in the learning mind. Such an analysis is best made by observing the mind in the actual and concrete process of working its way through the subject, and the most competent person to make this observation is the competent teacher whose function is to direct this process. The well-equipped public school teacher ought to be better able to make a helpful discussion of educational values in special fields than the superintendent, for he tests general products and results, while she ought to consciously direct processes in particular subjects. The specialist in a Normal School or University ought, also, to be better authority on the problem of method in his field than even the Professor of Methods or the Chair of Pedagogy. If specialists were to turn their attention to the problem of method and

educational values in this higher sense, we should ultimately bridge the chasm between our theory and practice; our theory would vitalize our teaching and in return our teaching would exemplify the principles of our theory. This chasm is partly due to the fact that our educational doctrines are obtained from a general study of mind alone, while they ought to be obtained from reducing this general view to a concrete form, or, perhaps better, the general view of mind ought to be approached through the medium of the subject which is mind in its concrete form. In making his preparation for teaching, the student has before him two subjects, apparently very different in every way; he sees little kinship between psychology and grammar. He usually feels that psychology is a professional subject —a subject which somehow prepares him to teach, while the special subject is non-professional. Normal Schools generally set aside a portion of their work and dignify it by the term "professional," while other work is cheapened by being called academic. In a Normal School the study of language, history, or mathematics ought to be, and can be, made as strictly professional as the study of psychology. In truth the latter, as generally taught, is just as non-professional as Latin or algebra; the only way to render any subject professional is to study its bearing on the process of learning and teaching. The essential nature of geography is just as important a factor in determining the method of learning and teaching geography as is psychology.

The result of this one-sided view—or at best this dual view of professional preparation—is that we have a literature of education that speaks of applied psychology, as if it were a subject to be learned and then in some way forced upon the subject,—the subject made to fit a scheme that has been prepared beforehand without particularly

consulting the subject to be professionalized. The result is that teachers "professionally trained" still continue unable to bridge the chasm between theory and practice.

This imperfect conception of the nature and relations of the factors which must coöperate to determine rational methods of instruction is not confined to the graduates of Normal Schools. In fact, this class of teachers promise to do much toward remedying this evil. It is the prevailing custom among teachers in secondary and primary schools to look upon the subject they teach as contributing very little to the method of its teaching. The result is to lower the subject—and, worst of all, the work of teaching—in the estimation of the teacher. The subject stands as so much simple and easy matter upon which no special preparation for the recitation is needed. The work ceases to be interesting and sinks into mere drudgery. College graduates, as a rule, take the same low view of work in these schools. They feel that the branches taught even in the best secondary schools present no problem worthy of their metal! There is a problem here worthy of their best endeavors and one that challenges, in point of difficulty, their strongest and keenest powers. They generally do not know where to look for it; it is a pedagogical, and not an academical, problem. This work is written with the confident hope that such a problem will be perceived in the domain of history teaching in the primary and secondary schools.

The ideas briefly stated in the preceding pages have given general direction to this work. The plan has been to look into history and discover there the processes and products that the mind must work out in organizing its facts into a system. Accordingly, the first step analyzes a number of historical facts to discover some of the essential concepts in history, and at the same time allows the

facts discovered to indicate something about the general way in which the mind must move in the subject. This is followed by a more detailed inquiry into the general processes involved in organizing the material of history into the form of a system. In other words, the general processes of interpretation and coördination and subordination are inquired into and illustrated. Under the head of the educational value of interpretation and coördination and subordination the specific intellectual processes and products are indicated and illustrated, and also the emotional and ethical stimulus imparted is pointed out. Next follows an attempt to make more definite the general principles of historical organization, and to show more fully their educational value by looking into the various periods and sub-periods of American history. The purpose here is not to organize the periods in detail, but rather to demonstrate the possibility of doing so. With the ideal of historical organization in mind, as these steps aim to create it, the next part of the discussion deals with those preliminary steps that the immature mind of the primary and grammar grades must take in order to prepare the way for the realization of the ideal set forth above. History in its organized or scientific form is an ideal toward which all work in the subject ought to be directed. The teacher in the primary and secondary schools ought to be under the influence of this view of history, and should be consciously influenced by the fact that his work is one step toward this goal.

# METHOD IN HISTORY

## THE GENERAL NATURE OF HISTORY AND THE PROCESSES INVOLVED IN THE ORGANIZATION OF HISTORICAL MATERIAL

### ESSENTIAL ELEMENTS OF HISTORY

**The General Character of the Problem.** Two factors unite to produce historical knowledge,—the transforming agent, mind, and the material to be transformed, the facts of history. The explanation of how historical facts become mind, and how mind becomes history, is the explanation of the process of learning history. The relation between these factors is an organic one. Hence, they can be most profitably discussed together. In fact it is mere speculation about historical science to discuss them out of this living relation, and leaves the ordinary teacher possessed of a body of theory and a body of concrete facts which have no power over each other. It is confidently believed that no better way can be found to enable the teacher to bridge the chasm between theory and practice than to exhibit the mind in the concrete process of working its way through history till present day problems are reached.

There must necessarily be two phases to our investigation: the first will set forth the essential attributes of the material out of which history is constructed and the form which this science will take, thus exhibiting it as a system of ideas,—history reduced to a form of

thought; the second will investigate the mental forms and processes that history calls forth,—mind transformed into history, or at least transformed by history.

**The Logical Method.** The first of these phases is the one in which we end with a logical view of history, —the form the subject must finally take in the mature mind. The logical method presents two phases: the deductive and the inductive. Both will be used but the stress will be upon the latter. The logical view is equally valuable to the teacher in every grade from the primary school to the university. This thought of the subject the university professor must build into the mind of the student and the primary teacher must hold it in view as the goal for which she is preparing her pupils; it is the ideal, on the side of the subject, that must inspire and beckon both. The discussion of the first phase naturally falls into two parts: one investigating the fundamental attributes of the subject-matter of history, and the other examining the function of these attributes in the process of giving the subject its scientific form. Although each of these sub-phases will have its turn in the discussion, it is not intended to keep them rigidly separate, but, for pedagogical reasons already given, they will be interwoven. Whenever conclusions are reached as to the nature of historical material, their pedagogical implications will generally be noted.

**The Psychological Method.** The view taken by this method is that of the immature mind in the process of development. The particular problem of the psychological method is the adjustment of historical material to the rapidly growing mind. The consideration of this problem, however, follows most economically after the discussion of the logical method and its application.

**An Erroneous View of History.** One of the most common errors about the nature of history is to regard it as a "record." It is not a record, at least not more so than is any other subject, for it does not deal with the record as such. History is hardly the thing recorded, for it does not deal with events for their own sake, but only so far as they reveal the life of which they are the result. The "record" idea of history is a conception both superficial and harmful,—superficial because it gives the teacher and student no clue to the real nature of the historical problem, and harmful because it both leads to the belief that the book is the subject, and suggests that the proper thing to do is to transfer the record from the book to the pupil's mind by means of verbal memory.[1] After making this brief statement of what history is not, let us go in quest of a conception that is more fundamental, and therefore more helpful; and one, too, that is drawn from a careful analysis of the material of history itself.

**Ideas of Form and Content.** 1. The Pilgrims landed on Plymouth Rock in 1620. There were one hundred and two of them. They made that stormy voyage in the Mayflower, and in the cabin of that little ship they signed the compact. Had the student been present, he could have seen these and many other physical facts: some he could have heard and others felt. These facts taken together constitute the physical act or event called the "Landing of the Pilgrims." But now the student can only picture the action or event. This action constitutes the form of the event.

The facts given above could have been changed more

[1] This view of the subject leads to assigning lessons in terms of paragraphs and pages; and, what is still worse, the recitation is conducted in the same way.

or less and our institutions have been what they are. But the ideas which the Pilgrims brought with them and which the "Landing" gave expression to in part could not have been seen, and could not have been changed without producing profound changes in our institutions. If the settlers in America had been animated by different ideas, how different would our life have been.

2. The Declaration of Independence was made in Independence Hall, Philadelphia, on July 4, 1776, in the handwriting of Thomas Jefferson with the big signature of John Hancock attached. The action or event could have been seen had the student been present, but now it belongs to the field of imagination. Does the significance of the Declaration lie in any or in all of the facts named above? Many of them are accidental; the Declaration might have been in Carpenters Hall, in some other month, on some other day, in the handwriting of some clerk and signed by some other president. The vital thing in this act is the thought expressed,—the political doctrines contained in the Declaration. These are not picturable but can be apprehended by the judgment. They are not accidental but enduring, and cannot be changed without altering the whole course of the American Revolution.

3. The battle of Gettysburg was seen, heard, and felt by its participants. It had a time and a place; there were so many soldiers in line on each side, and these were commanded by certain officers; so many men were killed and wounded. In short, a hundred interesting incidents connect themselves with this gigantic contest. But did these things constitute the real Gettysburg? Could not most, if not all, of these features have varied and yet the real historical fact have occurred?

The ideas and principles that surged in the brains and hearts of the two armies and of the two sections, and without which the physical struggle would not have been, were the true Gettysburg. No; the student who does not see two sets of political, social, and industrial ideas belch from the opposing cannon and flash from sword and saber or gleam from deadly bayonet misses the permanent and enduring Gettysburg!

**Historical and Pedagogical Inferences.** From this brief analysis, which may be continued indefinitely, the following inferences and implications may be made. 1. That two sets of facts—one physical and picturable and the other mental and perceived by the judgment—run parallel through history.[1] The first set consists of a people's acts and the second of its thoughts, feelings, and motives.

2. The acts or events are the signs or expressions of a people's thoughts and feelings. Man thinks and feels and then acts. He acts in a given way because he feels in a given way. When a nation is happy it passes resolutions of approval and builds memorials, but if it be angry it may pass resolutions of condemnation or go to war. The act varies as thoughts and emotions vary, and is therefore adapted to give expression to the state of mind of the actors.

3. It may be said that action constitutes the outer form of history, and thoughts and emotions make up its inner essence. It follows, then, that the real problem of history lies in this content. Actions or events are means to the solution of this problem.

4. Actions occur but ideas continue. Events are transient while ideas are enduring. Only ideas recur.

[1] Every school subject presents these two phases—form and content.

The same idea, purpose, or sentiment may express itself in various actions of very different characteristics. The event, therefore, is particular while the content is general. Connections or relations in history are to be found in content rather than in form.

5. Primarily, acts are effects, while thoughts and feelings are causes. But a people acting under the impulse of an idea may modify it greatly. In a secondary sense, then, events are causes and ideas are effects. The suggestion is that the teacher must see that the student catch the change in public sentiment that comes through action, as well as search for the true cause of events in a preceding state of public sentiment.

**Why History Grows. Due to Differences and Conflicts in Content.** It must be apparent, from the conclusions reached, that the problem of how to study and teach history can be illuminated by a closer study of thought and sentiment,—the life of a people. This life moves forward by virtue of the forces within. These forces are differences which arise in the content of history and which tend to express themselves in events. The differences may attract no attention at first,—may be unconscious. They may also be strong enough that men begin to take sides. Parties may be formed to bring to pass ideas and interests in direct conflict. Differences may lead to collisions powerful enough to sweep nations into war.

From the above the following conclusions may be drawn:

1. That the student of history must watch for the rise of differences in ideas and for the gathering of men into parties.

2. That in some cases differences lead to disputes, conflicts of opinion, and even war.

3. Conflicts do not occur over political events alone, but over religious, educational, industrial, and social differences.

4. Herein lies a large part of the ethical value of history to the student.

**How History Grows. Laws of Continuity and Differentiation.** The way growth takes place may be seen from the following: A long time ago an English king called around him his richest nobles to see how much they would give to carry on government or to prosecute war. This was repeated till it became a right on the part of the lords to grant or refuse aid. After a time, other classes sent representatives to advise the king. The two sets of advisers formed the two houses of parliament, and the people, through these representatives, managed the government of England. The English colonies carried this idea to America. In early colonial times there was but one set of representatives for purposes of legislation,— men elected to represent the town or county in the colonial legislatures. But long before the Revolution, nearly all of the colonies had two sets of representatives. The Revolution called for a third set of delegates to represent the colony in the Continental Congress. The idea of delegated authority has made great strides since that time. Now the ward has its representatives in the common council, the township has its delegates to the commissioners' court, while the county elects men to go to the state legislature, and the states in turn elect two sets of representatives to the national Congress. The idea goes further: it has penetrated religious, educational, and industrial organizations, and seems to furnish a convenient method of conducting affairs in a large way. The complexity of the system is in striking contrast with the simple method

of the colonial days or of the still simpler way of early England.

Continuity and differentiation in the content of history are also well illustrated by the development of the idea of toleration in religion. Once Virginia persecuted Puritans and Baptists, while Massachusetts banished Roger Williams and hanged Quakers; but even in colonial times, the laws against Quakers were either repealed or not enforced, and the penalties against heresy were greatly reduced. The wars with the French and Indians and the revolutionary struggle wore off the sharp edges of religious prejudice still further, so that most of the states recognized religious freedom in their new constitutions. The sentiment of toleration won its way so completely that the Constitution declared the national legal separation of church and state; but religious freedom has not ceased growing after winning a formal and legal recognition of its right; it is now taking on the form of a moral and personal right. The large and increasing number of religious sects at present, compared with the number in colonial days, shows how rapidly differentiation in religious belief has gone on.

Other illustrations of these laws may be found by tracing the development of our public-school system from its colonial germs to its present high degree of complexity, and also by marking the evolution of the crude industrial ways of our early settlers down to the highly developed organism of our own times.[1]

Conclusions drawn: 1. That the subject matter of history is the life of the people in the process of growth under the laws of continuity and differentiation. 2.

[1] The importance of clearly understanding these laws justifies large illustration. Each new illustration can be made more helpful by using a different sort of idea from those found in preceding illustrations.

That the law of continuity means that there is a connected movement forward in the life of the people without breaks or gaps. Growth is continuous: it proceeds out of antecedent ideas and interests. Continuity preserves the old and appeals to the conservative. 3. The law of differentiation means that the thoughts and feelings of a people take on new forms in the process of growth. In adding something new to the content of history it increases its complexity. Differentiation produces conflicts and therefore appeals to the progressive. 4. That the understanding of history requires the student to take ideas as germs and trace them through all phases of their growth, thus putting continuous and similar content into different events; and to see along the line of development new phases of the idea appearing, thus putting different and contrasting ideas into the content. 5. When the student has traced an idea from its origin through its different transformations, till he sees it functioning in present day affairs, he will have a grip upon it that is enduring and will have an interest in it that is everlasting.

**Five Fundamental Institutions in History.** Not only do movements of thought and feeling in the life of the people develop under the laws of continuity and differentiation, but the life of the race, as a whole, grows in the same way. An examination of the life of any people will reveal certain permanent features common to the history of all civilized nations. There will be found five well-marked phases,—a political, a religious, an educational, an industrial, and a social phase. These are further differentiated by the fact that each has a great organization, called an institution, around which it clusters, and whose purpose, plan of work, and machinery are peculiar to itself. For political ideas the center is

the institution called government; for religious ideas, the church; for educational and culture influences, the school; for industrial life, occupation; and for social customs, the family. But there was a time when these elements of life were not so fully differentiated. Primitive history shows that, in the beginning, institutional life presented itself to man's consciousness as a simple and undivided whole. Abraham did not separate in thought his political from his religious duties; nor did he think of his business and social interests as different and disconnected. In his day there were only the germs of a government, a church, and a school; and these were so interwoven with other interests that they constituted one great life. But between then and now the principle of differentiation has done its work so perfectly that we can think of the government without the church coming into mind, and so with the other institutions. These institutions have become great crystallized centers of life around which the thoughts and feelings of a people grow.

Growth, operating under the law of continuity, becomes permanent by being embodied, through law or custom, in its appropriate institution. Growth in political thought and feeling finds entrance into government; public sentiment, under the pressure of war, abolished slavery in this country, and the result was written in our constitution; the rise of political parties has added many new customs to our method of president-making. A movement in religious sentiment may ultimately embody itself in church, creed, or custom. The admission of women to colleges on equal terms with men shows that the school adjusts itself to the growth of educational ideas; the idea of a practical education, so called, has spread till all classes of schools—the public school, the

college, and the university—have felt its touch and have remodeled courses of study so as to harmonize with the new idea. Similarly this is true of social and industrial life. This crystallization of institutional thought and feeling makes progress possible,—a given generation profiting by the labor of the one that is past, and building for the one that is to come.

But this is not all gain; for an idea, after embodiment in institutions through formal enactment or by well-established custom, tends to cease growing, it becomes very largely a conservative force, and hinders, to some extent, further progress, appealing to men of conservative tendencies. The established order in society sets itself up in the minds of people as an ideal to be maintained, and public sentiment moves away only after another and different ideal wins the people to its support.

Since public opinion, operating under the law of differentiation, is seldom unanimous, it is impossible to embody all its phases in a rule of action.

**Inferences from the Growth of Institutions.** 1. That the facts of history may be grouped in five classes and that lines have proceeded out of the past, differentiating along the route of growth until five fundamental institutions have resulted. 2. History is not confined to politics but includes the entire life of the people. 3. That the student must group the facts of history around these lines of development, thus giving linear continuity to it and suggesting a clue to its organization. 4. Such movements, embodied in institutions, have now the support of the majority which ceases to make much progress. 5. That the more advanced phases of sentiment do not, for the time, become embodied in law, custom, or constitution, and thus form germs that may produce a conflict between what is and what ought to be. Hence,

the student must take account of sentiments that fail to find acceptance with the majority.

**The Five Phases not Coördinate in Value.**—While these great ganglia of humanity's life are all structurally essential to its well-being, yet they are not, at all times and in all movements of that life, of equal historical value. Movements, large or small, have been characterized usually by the predominance of one of these phases. Now it is the religious, again the political; and at another time the social and economic are so blended in the movement that neither seems to dominate; often, as will be demonstrated below, the results may be profoundly felt in all phases of institutional life, although very seldom found equally distributed among them.

Industrial institutions absorb public attention in our age more than any others. This is partly an epochal tendency, for it was hardly true of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. But it is mainly true now because industrial questions have so extended themselves as to outrank all other interests. Government, however, undertakes to adjust the interests of the various institutions so as to promote the best life of the whole and of its parts. Each institution reacts upon government, and affects it both directly and indirectly. The state, therefore, gives direction, not only to political history, but to all history. Since politics are not political only, it seems natural that the political-industrial phase of life should constitute to-day a greater portion of history than any other.

**The Organic Unity of Institutional Life.** Although the process of differentiation has given us five well-marked sets of institutional ideas, yet the principle of continuity teaches us to look for their organic unity. Some illustrations will set forth this life-connection between the phases.

The French and Indian war was a great military event, and, as such, belonged immediately to the domain of government. It produced, as we should expect, great political results, but besides there flowed from it religious and industrial consequences of almost infinite importance. This struggle, ending with victory for the English, decided that henceforth English customs of life should prevail in North America rather than French; as a consequence the religion of England, Protestantism, became the predominant religion of the colonies, instead of Catholicism, which was the state church of France. If, however, victory had been won by France, the religious effect would have been just as great, and the principle of historical growth would have been as fully illustrated. Again, this war brought into personal contact the Puritan, the Baptist, the Catholic, the Protestant, the Dutchman, and the Cavalier; they messed together, marched together, and fought together; they shared each other's joys and sorrows, victories and defeats. Seven years of this and other forms of mutual intercourse did much to tone down religious exclusiveness and prejudice. A series of military events thus produced profound religious effects. This war also decided that free, public instead of parochial, schools should be the rule in America. This long struggle burdened both England and the colonies with heavy debts. The former tried to lighten her load by putting new burdens on the trade of the latter. The colonies replied by refusing to have commercial intercourse with England, and began to develop their own resources, which led the way to industrial as well as to political independence. So much for the political, religious, educational, industrial, and social effects of a series of military events.

The American Revolution was a mighty political

upheaval whose forces are not yet spent. The American people came out of this struggle with greatly modified social, moral, and religious ideas and feelings.

Let us push our examination further by looking at a form of growth that did not have its origin in politics. The planters at Jamestown took that first cargo of dusky freight purely as a business venture; they simply asked how to raise tobacco in the easiest and cheapest way; they had no thought of its bearing on the other forms of institutional life. The venture proved to be a financial success and the system of slave labor filled the South. But slavery gave the master and his children wealth and leisure, while to the non-slaveholding white, it brought poverty and toil; he could hardly win a competence for himself and family in competition with slave labor; whatever his ambition, the poor white could seldom break over the industrial barrier that slavery built between him and success. The children of the planter could be educated, but this institution, which began as a business venture, denied to the child of the non-slaveholder an opportunity for an education; poverty could not educate its children, and slavery refused to build free schools. These differences drew a sharp line through Southern social life. There was little fellowship between the two classes of families, for this industrial venture had given into the hands of one class all the social amenities that wealth, leisure, and intelligence could bring, while to the other these were practically denied. All these influences made the slaveholder the politician of the South; no other class was so well fitted for statesmanship. He was the most desirable man to send to the colonial legislatures, and afterwards to the National Congress. This industrial venture seemed to favor office-holding, for the South, at all times, furnished a larger proportion of

national officials, according to her population, than did any other section of the country. In the colonial legislatures, the slaveholder naturally passed laws that favored the development of this industrial system. Thus in the nation at large, slavery virtually organized and destroyed political parties, dictated the nomination of candidates for the presidency, defeated candidates opposed to its interests, declared war, and made treaties. Not only did this industrial system thus mold the politics of our country, but it also colored the moral and religious thought and feeling of the entire nation; it led Southern pulpits to interpret Holy Writ in its defense; it rent in twain religious organizations that were hoary with age. Thus we see that negro slavery, an industrial institution in its origin, affected most profoundly every phase of our institutional life.

If this analysis be correct, the following conclusions may be drawn:

1. That the life of a people is an organic whole; that this life is one mighty stream of five currents moving on toward one goal; that there is not one destiny for government, another for the church, another still for the school, and a different one for industrial and social interests, but that all these constitute one life with one destiny.

2. That the student must trace transverse and intricate, as well as parallel, lines of growth in the subject of history; that he must take each great event and each great series of events, and discover the extent to which many or all of the institutions are affected, thus producing in his own mind a body of organized knowledge which shall be the subjective counterpart of that objective unity found in the life of a people.

3. Incidentally this illustration shows, in a general way, how an idea or an institution is to be traced from

its beginnings till it reaches and influences the present; that the student may discover how the idea, with all its accumulations of a great past, may touch the present at so many points.

4. The life history of an idea or institution produces a profound impression on the student. It gives him a deepened respect for the institution and makes him alive to its present-day needs.

## PROCESSES INVOLVED IN ORGANIZING HISTORY

**The General Nature of Organization.** The general principles wrought out in the preceding pages throw some light on the possibility of organizing historical material. It is now proposed to ask how the mind takes what appears at first view as disconnected and isolated facts of history and organizes them into a consistent body of knowledge; to state and illustrate the particular processes through which this material goes, and the final form it takes in the mind of the student. This will make clear the transformation of historical matter into a system of thought.

The analysis of the processes involved in organizing a subject makes the student conscious of the so-called scientific or logical view of the subject. Science declares that every subject of investigation presents two sets of facts for organization, generals, and individuals,—laws and principles on the one hand, and particular and specific phenomena on the other. Neither set, viewed alone, constitutes the subject, nor do both, taken merely in the aggregate; it is only when the mind grasps these two sets of facts in their organic unity that we have a subject in the true scientific sense. The relation is a vital one, for science declares that principles[1] are originally discovered by the examination of individual facts, while

[1] Principles in history resemble all others in being general in their nature, and differ from some in being active forces moving to the production of the individual facts through which they express themselves. Like most principles, they inhere in content rather than in form, and vary in degree of generality from those found in a few individual facts to those sweeping in all the individuals of the subject.

the latter are to be looked upon as the concrete embodiment of principles; in other words, if the mind begins with one it must pass to the other and back again in order to realize the scientific ideal so far as organization is concerned. The problem of organization, therefore, is really the problem of constructing a science, that is, of discovering, stating, and explaining the logical relations between these two sets of facts.

Organization is, therefore, a mental process and not a mechanical one. No subject, as many teachers unfortunately think, can be organized in a notebook or on a blackboard. At best, such an arrangement of words and signs can only suggest a few of the relations and processes involved in organization. Too often systems of lines, braces, and brackets delude the student and become a substitute for that real organization which can take place only in the thinking mind.

**The Organizing Principle of History.** There is a central principle in every subject which sets it off from every other subject, and at the same time is the very core of its every phase and fact.[1] In history we have found this central principle to be the growth of institutional life, because this idea touches and is touched by all the great events which mark the course of human destiny. Some events have helped and some have hindered the evolution of institutional life, but all have been related to it. Not only is this principle fundamental to all events, but also to all sub-phases of human thought and feeling, whether they be marked by periods of calm or periods of agitation,—periods of evolution or periods of revolution.

[1] A fact may be found in one or in many subjects according as it contains the central idea of one or many subjects. The same fact may appear in biology, geology, and history, but in each case it is related to a different principle and exhibits a different content.

**The Fundamental Processes in Organization.** We have already learned that organization names the processes by which the mind arranges the material of a subject according to its inherent relations. Based upon the relations between the principles of history and its particular facts, historical organization has two fundamental processes:

1. Interpretation, which gives the basis for integration and division or differentiation;
2. Coördination and subordination, which results in the proper selection and ranking of facts.

## The Process of Interpretation

### NATURE AND KINDS

**Definition of Interpretation.** Interpretation is the process by which the mind puts meaning or content into individual facts. Like organization, interpretation is a universal process and goes on wherever mind and object meet. In each individual fact two phases of content are discovered by interpretation: one phase is common to many other facts, while the other is peculiar to the interpreted fact. When interpretation reveals a content common to many individuals the basis of integration is found, while the discovery of the particularizing element furnishes the ground for division or differentiation.

In history the process of interpretation is carried on by discovering the growth of institutional life in particular events or in some more individual phase of thought and feeling. There are thus two kinds of interpretation in history; one puts content into events, and the other puts content into subordinate phases of institutional life.

**The Interpretation of Events.** Here external occurrences are viewed as the sign of some internal movement

of thought and feeling. To discover this movement through its sign, the event, is to interpret the latter. We have learned that just as a word is the sign of an idea, so is the act of a people the sign of their ideas and feelings. Some events are more easily interpreted because a people in conscious action generally selects the kind of event best adapted to give expression to its states of thought and feeling. Hence, the events of history are a sort of language into and out of which we read a people's life.

The full meaning of an event is obtained by viewing it under four relations: 1. As a product of a preceding movement in thought and feeling. Here the event is seen to emerge from the concrete life of a people and to be a natural and normal result of surrounding conditions. In other words, the event is viewed as a sort of receptacle into which the preceding current of public sentiment flows, and which it really created in the course of its development. 2. The second step in the interpretation of an event is to view it as a factor producing changes in the movement out of which it grew. Here the event returns, as it were, into the stream of institutional life, and works there those changes which it is capable of producing as cause. 3. If the event to be interpreted is a great one, or is long continued, then a third step must be taken, namely, to see how public opinion changes while the event is in the process of occurring. The excitement of action intensifies thinking, and produces changes in the minds of the persons involved. These changes are often very great, as in the case of a series of events, or of a period. 4. In the fourth place, fuller meaning and deeper interest may be given to the event or series by recalling similar events or by pointing forward to the recurrence of this idea in other events. Some

illustration of the interpretation of events will serve to make the conception more accurate.

The founding of Jamestown was an external event, and it remains such to the student until it is discovered to be the product and the sign of England's desire to extend her institutions and her interests to the western continent. Still further content is given to this event, when its success is seen to stimulate the national desire for colonial empire and for the planting of other colonies.

The formation of societies for non-importation by the colonial merchants is an event to be interpreted. In general, this is to be done by discovering in these organizations an idea reaching further than they did, and which appears as content in a wider range of events, and also by discovering in them a form of sentiment peculiar to them. The idea found as the content in these events is that of coöperation then (1765) growing up and beginning to control the acts of the colonists from Maine to Georgia. We put this sentiment into these organizations by discovering that they are caused by agitation for organized resistance to the Stamp Act. In doing this the student views this series of events as the natural outgrowth of the movement toward coöperation begun before 1765. But he must take another step, and trace the immediate effect of participation in organizations on the further growth of this sentiment, and thus gather their contribution to this great struggle. It can be done by watching how coöperation in their formation and functions roused a stronger sentiment,—how it made aggressive the society of the Sons of Liberty; gave origin to the Daughters of Liberty with their organizations for the promotion of household production and the development of an infectious enthusiasm for American liberty;

and, finally, how it stimulated those lower passions of hate and spite between the friends and foes of the new movement, and made each firmer in the position taken. But the student must go further in his interpretation, and trace the effect of non-importation upon American thought and feeling. He must see how the merchants gained greater confidence in coöperation and union through these organizations, since by them they entail an immense financial loss upon the English merchant, manufacturer, and laborer. Here the student ought to see the consternation of these classes: of the merchant as no more orders for goods came from America, of the manufacturer as he closed his establishment or discharged a portion of his laborers, of the latter as they ceased to draw wages, and were unable to pay debts and to buy food; and the united action of all these in storming parliament with petitions, and finally the speeches in that body which reveal changing national sentiment in favor of repeal. In these facts he will discover the true explanation of how fidelity to union was exalted into a virtue, and how opposition was regarded as a crime; how non-importation began to be looked upon as an efficient means of commercial retaliation, which lasted long after the revolution was over. Finally a new point of view is gained when the student looks upon the non-importation agreement as a revolutionary weapon—a boycott—to be used in forcing the English Parliament and people.

The American Revolution may be interpreted, as a whole, as a single event, having a preceding state of thought and feeling (causes) consisting of a progressive movement, and, finally, of a new phase of thought and feeling (results).

It may not be amiss to explain here how the process

of interpretation cannot be carried on. It is customary, when explaining the non-importation societies, simply to say that "they were caused by the Stamp Act." For the student, this may or may not be true. In one sense it cannot be true, for one external act has little, if any, direct historical influence over another. The Stamp Act and the non-importation societies, as external facts pictured in imagination, were three thousand miles apart and could not touch each other. Let us suppose that physical contact is not meant. Can the teacher be certain from the statement quoted what is meant? Ordinarily it would not mean that the relation to public sentiment had been traced; that these organizations had been seen to grow out of, and back into, this sentiment. Perhaps the pupil is left to the ingenuity of his own imagination to discover the true relations between these events. So long as that imagination passes directly from one event to another, no possibility of interpretation exists, for one individual fact has no interpretative power over another of the same rank.

On its practical side, interpretation may serve a useful end by bringing light from the content of past events to bear on present day movements. This may be done in three ways: 1. By finding conditions in the past that resemble present day doings. The reforms of Solon and the Gracchi will cast light on the reforms of Lloyd-George in England. 2. By presenting events or movements standing in striking contrast to those of our own times. The Puritan and the French revolutions not only show decided differences when contrasted with each other, but both have valuable lessons for our own times. 3. Bringing to present movements the long train of kindred ideas which have moved down continuously from the past. These events have most im-

portant lessons, because based upon continuity of content.

**The Interpretation of Phases of Institutional Life.** The fact that the principles of a subject vary in degree of generality, and that the less general phases of institutional growth are phases of some more general movement, makes the process of interpretation possible for this class of historical facts. This form of interpretation may be illustrated in a brief manner by the following example. The dominant idea in forming the Confederation, the cause for which the small states struggled in the convention of 1787, the principle in the Kentucky and Virginia resolutions, the recommendations of the Hartford convention, the doctrine of nullification as set forth by Calhoun and South Carolina, and the principle of secession, were only phases of the same great idea,—the sovereignty of the state. For the mind to discover the identity of this general institutional idea with this large number of apparently isolated and particular phases, is to interpret them. The meaning of each particular phase is greatly enriched by discovering in it the principle of state sovereignty. Other illustrations on a large scale may be found in the phases of union developed during the revolution, and also in the sentiment of nationality from 1789 to 1860.

### FORMS OF THOUGHT AND SENTIMENT AS DISCOVERED IN INTERPRETATION

**Causes.** It must be apparent, already, that the process of interpretation aims to put the student into close and intimate contact with the people whose life he studies. How to make events and other facts adequately reflect that life is a vital question in teaching history. In order to do this, at least all the important phases of thought and sentiment in a given movement must be

reached. All the various colorings that public opinion puts on in its process of growth will serve to deepen and enrich impressions. It is absolutely essential to right interpretation that history be conceived as a process. But it is difficult to view it as such, although we have seen this to be a fundamental characteristic of its content. The imagination is prone to picture scenes and situations and thus deceive the judgment into thinking history statical. This view is best corrected by constantly tracing the influences and forces that produce the historical process. Such factors are denominated causes, but they are such to the student only when traced into the current of institutional life. It is quite fashionable now to go outside the historical field into the domain of geology, geography, and so on, to find some of the causes of the historical process. This is entirely proper and necessary, provided the student can trace these extra-historical causes into the current of human thought and feeling and note there the changes made. Only in this way can other subjects contribute to the interpretation of history.

**Every Fact in History is Both Cause and Effect.** We have already seen that in the general process of interpretation the student must put into the event the public sentiment that precedes and succeeds it. In doing this he views the outcome of events as both cause and effect. In truth, every fact of history is both cause and effect. This is a universal law and controls wherever life is. No complete interpretation is possible without taking this double relationship into account. The election of Lincoln looks back to the split in the Democratic Party as its immediate cause and forward to secession as its immediate effect. How inadequate the explanation of this great event to view it as either without the other! "View

the election of Lincoln both as an effect and a cause," is a typical question. It will make interpretation clearer if we look at the nature of historical causes.

**Positive and Negative Causes.** On the basis of their essential nature we may class causes as positive or negative. Public sentiment, or any force which molds public sentiment, is positive when by virtue of its essential nature it tends toward progress, tends to promote civilization. A positive cause is constructive in intent and being. A negative cause is a phase of public sentiment or a force which tends, from its inherent nature, to be destructive, or at least obstructive; it tends to stand in the way of progress. Thus the sentiment that favored union in the colonies against the aggression of England was positive, while the attitude of king and parliament was negative. The sentiment in favor of a strong government during the Confederation was a positive cause, for, in its nature, it was progressive and constructive; while the opposition to the adoption of the Constitution was a negative cause, for the reason that it tended from its nature to hinder progress. The causes of the Civil War, or of any great war, may be classified in the same way. If revolutions be compared as to the number of positive and negative causes, it will be found that the greater number of negative causes belong to the most destructive revolutions, while the number of positive causes increases as the revolution approaches the character of an evolution in institutional life. Hence, the interpretative value of classifying the causes of a movement in history under these categories.

Closer analysis will show that a result is seldom the product of a single cause, but more often the resultant of many causes. When a negative force is powerful enough to push the result in its own direction, it may be

called a negative result. When the resultant is the product of a collision of forces, as in the case of parties or of nations, the cause is generally viewed by one as positive and by the other as negative.

**Fundamental and Particular Causes.** In viewing the contents of events as active forces, a more valuable classification of causes may be found based upon differences in the degree of generality in the content. On this basis the student will discover that some are particular and special, while others are general and fundamental. The particular and the general, we have seen, bear a vital relation to each other in every department of knowledge. Hence, to be able to discover a series of causes as particular phases of some greater truth means not only more perfect interpretation, but is a long step toward organization in the form of integration. An illustration will make this clear. Let us take the causes of the decline of the Confederation. Here they are, as frequently seen in text-books:

1. The Confederation had no executive or judicial department.
2. Congress could not raise an army.
3. No power of direct or indirect taxation was given to the Confederation.
4. Congress had no control over domestic commerce.
5. Congress could not enforce treaties with other nations.
6. The Confederation operated on states and not on individuals.
7. The Articles of Confederation recognized the sovereignty of the state.
8. Voting in congress was by states.
9. The people owed allegiance to the state only.

The effect of these and of other causes that might be

named was the destruction of the Confederation. As causes, they were forces in the process of working out the result indicated. The student must see them as such—must witness them in this process—if the right interpretation is to be made and a proper value set on each cause as a factor in the result. But there are three views, any one of which he may take. He may look upon these statements as expressing a given amount of historical fact, statistical in its nature, which may be learned by using memory, thus gaining no interpretation. Again, the student may see each of these as a real force moving toward its own result. Each is thus only an individual and isolated cause and hence of little organizing value. This is always the result of seeing only a series of direct or particular causes.

The above points of view may be taken without the consciousness of the fundamental cause coming into the student's mind. In this state of mind he sees no connection between the first cause given above and the last one. The identity of causes two, three, four, and so on, with the last cause in the list is not perceived. The only connection, the only kinship among these causes that this view gives is that each aids, as a cause, in producing the same result,—the downfall of the Confederation. This process is vastly superior to the first named, for it yields more discipline and a better understanding of the subject.

Another view may be taken: the general or fundamental cause may be found and the others may be interpreted with reference to it. The careful comparison and contrast of the causes listed above will show that the first eight are closely related to the ninth cause. By common consent, when the colonists transferred their allegiance from England, they gave it on all domestic concerns

primarily to their respective colonial governments. The Continental Congress recognized this relation in creating the Confederation by making the states, in the main, sovereign. Wherever primary allegiance is placed, there sovereignty will reside. This shows that allegiance conditions sovereignty, and that cause seven is the result of cause nine. Great men like Madison and Hamilton attributed much of the Confederation's weakness to the fact that it did not operate on individuals. The truth is that the Confederation had no individuals — citizens — on which to operate. The people were citizens of the states, because they had placed their allegiance there; hence, cause nine is the cause of cause six. Why could not congress enforce treaties made by itself? Who violated such treaties? Evidently the citizens of the states. What power had congress over them? None, since they owed allegiance to their respective states. Thus, cause five is the effect of cause nine. The fourth cause in the list bears a similar relation to the last one. Logically, the framers of the Confederation could not have given the Confederation control over domestic commerce after recognizing that the people owed it no direct allegiance. It would simply have aggravated the situation if the Confederation had been given executive and judicial departments. The attempt of the executive to enforce the laws of congress or execute the decisions of the judges would have brought the states and the Confederation into violent collision, for the citizens of the states would have been constantly appealing to their own authorities for protection. The men who made the Articles were more logical than some of their critics have been.

In the same way the remaining particular causes of the fall of the Confederation may be traced to the fundamental cause, thus illustrating its interpreting value, as compared

with the other possible ways of viewing the causes of this great event in American history. From every point of view we must see that the reduction of these causes to their highest terms is vastly more to be desired than either of the other methods of working with them.

It thus appears possible to reduce a series of particular causes to one fundamental one, or at least to a few. In no subject is it more difficult than in history to reduce diversity to unity. The constant tendency of the student, especially in dealing with causes, is to enumerate facts which have obvious differences and take it for granted that a new fact has been discovered, when in truth the new fact may be only another embodiment of a general idea which has already been often discovered in other particular facts. A similar study of the causes of the Civil War will show like results, the reduction of a larger number of particular causes to one, slavery, or at most two, slavery and state sovereignty. This illustration is an example of the process of interpreting great movements as a whole in the light of their causes, and may also be viewed as illustrating the interpretation of particular phases of thought[1] rather than the interpretation of events. It is very apparent that the teacher may set his class a very interesting and valuable problem: Analyze the particular causes in order to obtain a general cause and show how the general cause is found in each particular cause.

The classification applied to causes may be extended to effects with the same educational advantages. The interpretation of a movement as a whole requires a study, not only of causes, but also of its effects, for the nature of a movement is partly expressed in its results. Results

[1] Other illustrations of this most important form of interpretation will be given under the various periods.

reflect to a large extent the movement as a whole which produced them. Hence, to classify these as positive or negative and as general or particular is to give a fuller understanding of the movement.

**Purpose and Means.** The process of interpretation is not complete if it leaves out of the content of historical facts the intention and motives of men. The concrete ambitions of men, organizations, parties, armies, are in conflict. The conflicting interests are factors in the movement of history. Most of the physical forces of history are transformed and enter human consciousness as motives and ends on account of which men struggle.

Causes and effects may come and go in history for a long time without arresting the attention of the people, or, at most, without absorbing enough notice by touching their interests to create a conscious effort for a well-defined end. As long as this is true, the categories of cause and effect are sufficient to account for and to interpret historical movements. But when causes and their effects begin to be more widely recognized, men assume a new attitude toward them. As the movement increases in intensity, persons arise who seek to promote or retard it, or it may be, to use it for other and ulterior ends. When this stage is reached, the student must take into account the transformation that has taken place. What was once an unconscious moving energy becomes now a great stream of thought and activity marching toward some well-defined goal. A striking illustration of this transformation of cause and effect into means and end is seen in the growth of sentiment that made the Civil War possible. Without trying to be very specific we may say that one of the causes of the struggle was the estrangement that grew up between the two sections. This result was of slow growth, its roots extending far back into colonial days. But in

that early time no one recognized or took account of it,—its work was going on silently. It was not until the first quarter of the last century that great statesmen in both sections began to bestow upon it anything like continuous thought. The Missouri struggle was the first event to call general attention to the growing gulf, and although the Webster-Hayne debate, nullification, and the struggle for the right of petition attracted still wider attention to the disparity in thought and feeling between the two sections, the idea of their estrangement took great hold on only a few minds. From now on, Webster and Clay are devoted, each in his way, to the preservation of the Union, while Calhoun, perhaps unconsciously, gives up his life to a cause that could only promote the growing estrangement of the two portions; yet it is plain that the majority of the people at this time did not take the question into their thoughts and feelings and resolve to accomplish certain ends,—one part of the people had not yet resolved to give its life to secession or the other to the preservation of the Union. More and more, however, these ideas began to win men to their support, till, in the latter part of the fifties, as the old parties were dissolving under the pressure of the conflict, the two sections stood arrayed against each other, one marshaling its forces under the banner of the Confederacy and the other under the flag of the Union. Yet even at the opening of the war the sections were not agreed among themselves as to the supreme end of the conflict. For in the South some held to secession only as a means of preserving slavery, while in the North some still called for the destruction of slavery as the highest aim of the war.

Other illustrations will be found in the organizing ideas of the various periods. The same law of growth—the

transformation of causes and effects into purposes and means—will be seen. The mastery of this relation between these two pairs of categories is essential in the explanation of great movements in history. It will be seen how inadequate an explanation is that which rests on causes and effects alone, or upon purposes and means alone. It should be made clear that purposes and motives often arise out of conditions and in the presence of facts that may be called causes, and that these causes are modified by the purposes they originate and the means used in their realization.

**The Form of an Event Due Mainly to its Purpose.** The effort to attain ends projected by men as individuals or as nations will give rise to a series of events. This suggests that purposes are causes. In fact, it is rightly held that the purpose of an event, if it have one, is its true cause. At least, the peculiar form of the event is due to the fact that it comes into being as a means to accomplish a result that exists in idea before the event takes place. This difference the student must always detect between an event resulting from an ordinary cause and one that results from a purpose. For on the difference in the form of events depends the conclusion as to whether they result from conscious or unconscious thought and feeling. The conventions in the various states that met to consider the question of ratifying the Constitution, took their peculiar form as events from the nature of the end they were to subserve. Their adaptation to the end in view existed in the thought of the people before the conventions existed in fact. We cannot say that the Stamp Act Congress was in the minds of British statesmen as an end to be accomplished by the passage of the Stamp Act. But one cause of the Stamp Act Congress did exist in thought before the Congress did in fact, namely, the

determination to secure the repeal of the Stamp Act. The men who passed the act did not consciously plan to arrange the act so that it would produce a congress of the colonies, but the men who secured the repeal of the act did consciously plan the congress to that end. There is, then, a greater degree of adaptation between the purpose and its means than between the cause and its effect. This greater degree of adaptation often suggests a difference in the content of the two classes of events, especially on the side of feeling. The event or the series of events created by the people for the attainment of some cherished end is permeated by an intensity of feeling that is impossible in events that come into being more or less unconsciously.

**A Means must be Viewed as Taking Part in a Process.** Without this idea many series of events could hardly be organized. How could the individual facts of a military campaign become intelligible unless the student can illuminate them by the design of the head of the army? Of a series of events used as means the end must be seen in each. This is discovered in two ways: 1. By noting how the means are adapted to secure the given end. This point has just been illustrated. 2. By watching the means in the process of working out the end in view. The very nature of a means requires that it shall take part in a process, otherwise the end could never be actualized. If the student fail to witness this process, he fails to get at least one-half of the relation which means bears to end. It is easy to say or to learn that Hamilton's bank aimed to strengthen the national government. It is quite another thing to trace the steps by which this end was realized. No doubt Hamilton and Washington and the leading Federalists saw the bank in the process of bringing into real existence a result that once existed

in their thoughts and desires only. The student, to reach a correct interpretation, must see this means moving to its end just as the men who observed it did. He must observe that the creation of the institution called into existence, in spite of a most determined opposition, the doctrine of implied powers; that the stock of the bank was taken up by business men with great avidity, thus binding certain capitalists to the government by ties of interest, and giving confidence to other business men; the student must see how the presence of uniform bank notes payable in specie impressed the people with the wisdom of the new plan and the weakness of the old; how the credit of the nation in the eyes of foreigners was raised by having a responsible financial agent through which it could secure loans. And, finally, he must discover that the bank's objects were so perfectly secured that its original enemies were lessened, its recharter defeated in 1811 by but one vote in the lower house, and was carried in 1816 by the very party which had formerly opposed it. In some such way the student must watch and trace means in the very process by which their ends are attained. Otherwise a set of means becomes a mere collection of mechanically related facts.

**Immediate and Remote Ends.** In the process of interpretation it is helpful to distinguish between immediate and remote ends. The difference here is mainly one of degree. A remote purpose is one that can be secured by the use of many intermediate steps; but the people may project a purpose into each step. The people as a whole come more easily to the contemplation of immediate than remote ends. The probability of speedy attainment seems necessary to stimulate the majority of men to enthusiastic devotion to a cause. Only statesmen, philanthropists, and reformers seem able to strive with persistent

zeal for ends whose fulfillment may belong to the remote future. The student must see, therefore, that as a rule the more immediate the purpose he finds in an event or series, the closer he is getting to the mind and heart of the people, as a whole, concerned in the undertaking. But while this is true, at the same time he is dealing with ends that are to the leaders of a people's destiny only so many means in the process of attaining remote and more profound subjects. It thus becomes necessary, if the student master the thought and feeling of any period in its completeness, to compass both the immediate and the remote ends and aims that moved the people of that time.

The levying of the tax on tea in 1767 had for its immediate end the collection of a revenue on tea and other articles. This seemed to most of the people of England and America the chief end in view. But by the leaders in both countries the raising of a revenue was looked upon as a means, while the ultimate end to be reached was the submission of America to parliamentary authority. In America the great mass of the people had before themselves resistance to the tax by the formation of non-importation and non-exportation societies, while the leaders in the agitation looked upon these efforts as mere means in the accomplishment of a remote and more universal end,—the acknowledgment that Americans were entitled to the rights of Englishmen. To get the full content of this struggle, the student must find the motives of all parties engaged in it.

**Danger of Reading Purposes into Effects.** A danger arises, not so much out of the process of interpretation as from the tendency of an unrestrained and untrained mind. This danger originates in attributing purposes to effects. When causes move toward a given result,

it is very easy to read into them effects and motives of which the people were entirely innocent. Thus, England asserted that the Americans in the time of the Stamp Act aimed at independence. The South, in 1860, believed the majority of the people of the North were abolitionists. An individual reads his own suspicions into the acts of an opponent. Nothing can be more erroneous than this method of reaching conclusions.

**The Higher Aim.** In the efforts to attain their ends men and nations bring about results which were not planned by them, and whose occurrence they could not foresee. Men may plan and arrange means to carry out definite ends, but effects of an opposite nature often result from their efforts. Passion, interest, and selfishness may be the motive and the end, yet out of these may come results that will bless posterity to the remotest generations. Slavery annexed Texas and brought on war with Mexico, from which was wrested an imperial domain. Yet how different the remote result from the immediate aim. Morris' *Hegel* contains the following on this general point:

"The particular historic event exists by the grace of the particular volition of a particular human being; it is immediately what the individual intended, and is explained by his intention, but by the grace of God it acquires a character beyond what was intended, requiring a deeper and broader explanation. The whole interest and thought of the individual may be practically confined to his immediate personal aims and restricted plans. Beyond them he may not consciously see; to aught beside them he may be indifferent. But the sequel shows them to have been the material for the accomplishment of a plan of history, which is none other than the realization on this planet of

self-consciousness and self-mastering spiritual existence, passing himself through knowledge and control of a natural world of which he is the crown, and through knowledge and love of a God who is the ultimate ground and the eternal goal of all travail both of Nature and of Man. Thus God makes even the wrath of man to praise him."

This view makes the whole process of history—all its events and all ambitions of men and of nations—a means in the working out of the Divine Ideal.

### MATERIAL PRESENTED FOR INTERPRETATION

**Second-hand Material.** The facts of history come to the student in all stages of interpretation. The ordinary narrative text-book mainly confines itself to a description of the externals of history while adding some statements about ideas and sentiments. If the events are presented fully enough, the teacher will have an excellent opportunity to train to interpretation by means of inferences as to the content of events. But since the power to infer specific content from the form of the event is limited, there is need of a larger presentation of facts in order to obtain a fuller interpretation. These facts may sometimes come from the teacher, but better from the students by the use of larger works as references. The demands of accurate interpretation will not be met by turning this reading into a mere hunt for additional facts, for each would demand interpretation; but since each new fact is an element in the greater event, it will make its contribution to the interpretation needed, if the right attitude of mind is assumed. But if the student is taught by experience to expect that an enumeration of facts will be called for, he will, consciously or unconsciously, prepare for it. If, however, additional

and richer meaning of the event is pressed for, he will fuse his collection of details into some great idea which he now sees, perhaps for the first time, to be a portion of the content of the great event.

The point of view in gathering material to aid in interpretation is of great consequence, for in still another way it may fail of its end. It is often mistakenly believed that some unusual value attaches to gathering the opinions of the various authorities. In the first place, works of similar scope do not vary enough in the amount of matter and the peculiarity of opinions to make it worth while to search for them. In the second place, even if the works are much larger and from a different point of view, it is far better for the student to feel that he is interpreting history rather than the views of various authorities.

**Original Material.** Every historical people leaves behind, in some form or other, the records of its ideas and sentiments, customs and institutions. These records are the first-hand material out of which history is made, and consist in the main of official documents setting forth the ideas and principles of government; of the declarations of political parties, or the creeds of religious sects; of tables of figures, and of monuments; of the correspondence and diaries of men, great and small; of orations made on the platform,—in short, of any contemporaneous remains that express the nature and tendency of public sentiment. The value of such material largely depends upon the position of its author. It takes a rare mind to state the position of an opponent fairly and fully. Hence, the student should be constantly on the watch when studying controversial literature of any sort. A source may also be wrong because its author was unconsciously mistaken in the facts he

presents. If, however, he was in a position to speak for a community, a party, or the nation, his utterance must be of first importance in enabling the student to put the right meaning into the facts which he is endeavoring to interpret. Of course, the record is of much greater value if it embodies officially the institutional ideas of the whole community.

The superiority of this sort of material in the process of interpretation may be understood from the following considerations: 1. The facts thus presented are first-hand—unorganized, and the student is left to contend with a real problem with no ready-made solution at hand; he must work without the author's aid. Without discussing the educational value of this sort of work, it is apparent at a glance, that a wide difference separates the direct study of the Mayflower Compact from the study of a school text's statements about this document. 2. This direct study brings immediate contact with the source of truth concerning the content of the Compact. It is possible that texts have been written whose authors did not have first-hand access to the material of history, but have written from another's interpretation of that material. But what of it? Simply this: the student of such a text will be still further removed from the real source of truth, and like the author, not knowing all the concrete facts, or not knowing them exactly as they were, may make erroneous interpretations. 3. Even if the facts obtained in the above way are correctly interpreted, there is yet something lacking in the effect produced, which can be supplied only by applying the process of interpretation to original material. In no other way, in the study of historical material, may the student get deep and realistic conceptions of the life he studies—ideas and passions, motives and prejudices, and

all those subtle influences that go to make up concrete public sentiment. Take the examples of interpretation given above: how much more easily and correctly could the student put the right content into the events connected with founding Jamestown if he could read the motives of king and company in the charters granted, and could add to these the opinions of the settlers. Even the writings of John Smith, with all their exaggerations, would give meaning and reality to these events, such as could come in no other way. Again, how can the student get most easily and fully into the minds and hearts of the colonial merchants, the motives and passions that swayed them when organizing the non-importation associations? Evidently by reading the addresses sent to king and parliament and to the colonial legislatures; by reading the resolutions of town meetings in pledging support; by studying the correspondence between the associations of different towns, and by following the newspaper and pamphlet war that arose over these organizations and their work. Likewise with the struggle over state sovereignty, or any other phase of thought which the student tries to reach through events. Depth of impression and richness of content will always come from this sort of face to face contact with a people.

Original matter may be made to serve, as in the case of reference histories, merely as another source of individual facts. This defeats its use as a means of interpretation. In order to make it serve this function truly, the additional matter must be used as a key to the content of the event or movement under consideration. The student must not, unless he is searching for undiscovered truth, get the idea that he is examining records as records to determine their historical accuracy. Historical interpretation, and not criticism, is his problem.

THE EDUCATIONAL VALUE OF INTERPRETATION

**Nature of the Question.** The examination into the nature of the process of historical interpretation has furnished the basis for an intelligible answer to the problem of its educational value. There are two phases to the question: one inquires concerning the effect of interpretation upon the crude material of history, and the other concerning the resulting mental discipline and development. These two phases of the inquiry are intimately related, since both at bottom are questions of mental experience and should be separated only for convenience in discussion.

**Integration and Unification.** Interpretation produces, on the side of knowledge, an integrated or synthesized product. Since the ordinary methods of studying history do not accomplish this important educational result, it is worth while to bring this historical product into consciousness and analyze it carefully. Interpretation unifies the facts of history because it discovers in them a common content, and this subjects them to the only process by which knowledge is unified. This is a universal process since it is common to the organization of material in every realm of knowledge. It is also a process of highest educational value on account of the degree of strength called forth. No other subject appears at first glance less likely to admit of any sort of integration. On its external side — the one from which the student first sees it — history seems a wilderness of unrelated facts. But interpretation, by discovering common ideas, establishes order among these facts and connections among the larger parts of the subject; and if the process of interpretation is carried on till the student finds the common content of all the leading facts of history, the result is the integration of the subject as a whole. The mind

now sees, not isolated and diverse facts, but one great fact, —the growth of institutional life. In order to estimate the educational value of the historical whole we must examine into the nature of the different forms it may take. There are two of these: one in which the whole is a mere aggregation with its parts of the same nature, while in the other form the whole is a principle, or idea, and the parts are its phases. There is a vast difference in the pedagogical value of these two forms, and in the processes by which they are wrought out; and it is of the utmost importance that the teacher be able to recognize which kind of an historical whole he is creating in the student's mind.

**The Mechanical Historical Whole.** One of the commonest illustrations in history of this first form of whole is that of the time-whole. This is not only common, but is very superficial. Ideas grow and events occur in time, it is true, but neither are controlled merely by the lapse of years. New ideas and new movements do not begin with the opening of the year nor cease with the closing of a century; hence time-wholes and time-parts are more or less artificial. We may think of the expedition against Lexington and Concord as occurring within one day, thus surrounding the event in imagination by the limits of a day. The events under this mental form are an aggregation, exhibiting no living principle which gives them organic union. This event may be thrown into time-parts by perceiving that one portion of the event occurred before daylight, another in the forenoon, and still others in the afternoon. These smaller wholes are also artificial, for they do not correspond to the real parts of the event. The imagination may hold a vague picture of the events of American history as limited by the two points in time,—1492 and

the present year. This is also a mere aggregation. It may be definitely separated by other dates into smaller wholes — each time-whole bearing a name which calls up a confused jumble of events that have only time limits. Such periods of history—if they are entitled to so dignified a term — are mere mechanical wholes.

Another illustration of the aggregate whole, in contrast with the organic, is the space-whole. We picture the events of the American Revolution as having certain place-limits, and in so doing we create, as it were, an aggregation — a mass-whole. By picturing some of these events as belonging in the North, some in the West, and others still in the South, we drop our revolutionary space-whole into smaller wholes. These are not, as the imagination pictures them, derived from any peculiar differences in the events themselves, but are rather divisions based on differences in place, into which we mechanically force the events.

It is necessary that the mind should view the events of history under the forms of time-wholes and place-wholes, but such artificial aggregates can hardly be ends in knowledge. It would be dangerously superficial to let the relatively mature mind stop with such forms of thought or to give much conscious attention to their creation. Such work belongs to the stage of immaturity, but for the logical stage of thought this should be incidental and should result from the mind's struggle with events under the higher form of integration.

**The Organic Historical Whole.** The other form of integrated product is one in which parts are made into a whole by the presence of a common idea which permeates each part. Such a whole may be called an organic one—one in which each part exists for the whole and the whole for each part. This whole is not an aggregate but

a principle, and its parts are not smaller aggregates, but phases of the general truth. Such a whole expresses itself outwardly by an aggregation, and each phase of the general idea manifests itself in some part of the aggregation.

To see American history as an organic whole requires that the student shall find one idea—the growth of institutional thought and feeling — manifesting itself in all the details of that history. This idea constitutes the whole of our history and also its phases—growth of local institutions, union, a national spirit, concentration and expansion of the present day. These phases are usually denominated periods, and are really smaller wholes when considered in themselves. Periods in history are such for the student by virtue of the process of integration which follows from interpretation having discovered the great dominant phase of growth which characterizes the period and which furnishes the content of leading events of the time. The periods so viewed are organic wholes. They must be such in order to give the highest form of knowledge and the greatest degree of discipline.

**Integration a Synthetic Process.** Fuller meaning can be given to the educational value of integration in history if we turn from the historical whole to its process, comparison. Integration is a synthetic process. Constructive mental processes in history, as in all subjects, are based upon the discovery of resemblances in the facts interpreted. The process of interpretation which results in integration is carried on by the special process of comparison,—the process by which the mind discovers resemblances. Synthesis, or comparison, then, is the mental instrument by which historical wholes are wrought out.

In order to produce the best results, comparison should become a conscious instrument in the hands of the student.

When he feels its value by actual conscious experience, he becomes self-directive. Nothing frees him sooner from the monotony and drudgery of the history text than a conscious search for likenesses. These are not often formally expressed in school histories, so that this work may be performed by the student under the stimulus of a direction or question put by the teacher. Such work stimulates to real discovery; the student feels that he is getting more than is expressed in the book he uses, and this, too, without the direct aid of the teacher.

When the student forms a taste for searching after resemblances, the teacher will have no trouble at all in leading him into the habit of enlarging his comparisons by searching the work of more than one author. It must be kept in mind here that this extension of the process is not for the purpose of being able to state the particular views of each author, but rather that the student may have a deeper and fuller knowledge of the facts under investigation.

**Integration through Comparison Simplifies Historical Knowledge.** This does not mean simplification by a reduction in the number and complexity of its facts, but, as hinted several times above, by discovering unity in the facts. This is the process by which the student grows into the conviction that, comparatively, only a few great ideas have battled for mastery in the field of history; it convinces him that new and strange events may be in the new embodiment of old ideas.

**Division and its Uses.** It is a law of knowledge that whatever features enter into subjective truth must have their correspondence in objective truth. In no other place is this principle more often violated than in making divisions in history. Perhaps the reason is found in the

fact that such divisions are made instead of discovered.

In our analysis of the nature of history it was seen that in obedience to the law of continuity there are no gaps or breaks in the institutional life of a people, but that continuous and connected growth is its characteristic feature. It was discovered that the phenomena of history are subject to another principle of development,—differentiation. It is the movement of institutional life under this law that enables the student to discover progressive changes in the line of growth and thus mark transitions from one phase of thought and feeling to another. The operation of this law enables him to discover in the midst of some dominating movement different tendencies which may, under favoring conditions, become in turn the feature of some other period.

When, by interpretation, it is noted that certain periods of time are marked by peculiar phases of life, the basis for a division into parts is found. If this is to be done consciously for purposes of organization, three or four suggestions must be followed: (1) as already intimated, the parts are to be discovered, not made,—must be found in, rather than fitted on, the subject; (2) that if coördinate and logical parts are to be found, there must be but one basis of division for any set of parts and that basis must be the phase of growth that integrates the facts of the period, or some phase of this integrating idea; (3) the basis of division ought to be a fundamental one, that is, some phase of institutional growth, rather than portions of time, parts of country, or series of events.

It is quite the custom to divide history into parts on the basis of differences in time, thus marking centuries, half-centuries, and decades in the subject. But these are not so much divisions in the thing studied as divisions in the calendar. It is evident to the student of life that the end

of one century and the beginning of another no more mark the end of one movement and the beginning of another than any year within the hundred does. Life moves right on over decades and centuries—does not stop to take a holiday the first day of each new year as is implied in dividing and classifying events by years. Such divisions may be convenient when speaking of history in a general way, but they certainly do not in themselves reveal or designate anything fundamental in the life studied. But if the student need a framework to lean upon, as little harm will come from a chronological division as from any other artificial means.

**Fundamental Divisions in American History.** The same objection holds against geographical divisions. These may seem to be convenient, but are generally superficial, misleading, and often give little insight into the nature of the thing studied. The familiar division of our history into discoveries, settlements, intercolonial wars, war of the revolution, confederation, administrations, and so on, gives parts that are not entirely artificial, but are based on differences in events; they are somewhat superficial, for they deal with the externals of history rather than with history itself. This basis of separation is not fundamental enough to be helpful in the process of organization. If we drop below the surface-play of events to the growth of institutional ideas—the principle on which the subject as a whole is integrated—and ask what are the great differentiating features of American institutional life, it will be found that between 1607 and the present there are four great forms of development: (1) the growth of European ideas into local institutions; (2) the growth of local institutions into the form of a nation; (3) the development of the spirit of nationality; (4) the consolidation in national affairs. This division, to

be true, must meet all the requirements of organization.

**Why History is Separated into its Parts.** The process of division is not an end in itself, but a means to more concrete interpretation and more minute integration. History is separated into its parts, not only because there is a basis for separation in the thing itself, but, pedagogically, because it enables the mind to attack the problem of historical organization in detail. This idea of division as a means to more concrete study will be amply illustrated in the application of the principle of organization to the various periods and sub-periods.

**Division an Analytic Process.** The process of division is an analytic one, so far as the subject of history is concerned. In this respect division is the opposite of integration in its product and in its process. Hence, the discovery of differences in the act of interpretation trains the mind to make careful discriminations. To get the exact phase of public sentiment demands a most discriminating judgment. Interpretation can be made to do this if the teacher knows the content of the events interpreted and presses the student for it.

It is difficult to see how this analytic study can be pushed too far if there goes at each new step a new act of synthesis — the making of a new integration. But when the end is forgotten, and especially when the process is applied to the mere form of historical material, events and other accidental features, then there is danger ahead.

Many of the so-called "methods" of teaching history, such as the topical, the outline, the diagram, the exponential, and the brace method, though highly prized by some, are merely based on the relations of whole and part. A student may outline or diagram a lesson in history as presented by some author, and know almost nothing about it. The most imposing outlines or diagrams of

history are those made independent of any real basis of division, while to be of any teaching value, they must adhere to some fundamental idea as a basis, which usually renders them insignificant in appearance. It should not be forgotten by the diagram-maker that the student must understand the relations in history before he can make a logical diagram, and that after these relations are once mastered, he has comparatively little use for such artificial representations. Again, the outline and diagram represent historical material as statical, while in truth, it is predominantly dynamical. On still another count these artificial systems are found wanting: They represent on the blackboard or in the notebook a thing that has no corresponding existence in fact; often the pupil carries away only a picture of the subject in two dimensions—a picture utterly unlike, in form and feature, the facts studied; and the only redeeming feature about it is that the pupil will lose his false conception as soon as the artificial framework passes away. Finally, these systems at best are based upon but two out of the many categorical relations. Diagrams are a means, but not a means of very high order.

**Interpretation Develops the Historical Judgment.** In the discussion upon the nature of history, it was discovered that the acts of individuals or of nations are adapted to express the thought and feeling that give rise to them. The imagination sets men and nations before the judgment in the process of acting. From what they are seen to do and from the way in which it is done, the judgment reaches its conclusions as to the thoughts and feelings, ideas and emotions that give rise to the events and, therefore, give meaning to them. This act of judgment is the interpretative act proper, and the faculty that puts it forth may be designated as the historical

judgment. History is entitled to give name to this phase of the judgment's activity from the fact that history almost, if not entirely, alone stimulates and develops it. It would seem that it is reserved for history to confer upon the mind the peculiar and very important faculty of reading thought and feeling through deeds.

The training which gives the power to reach the plans and purposes of men through their acts has not only high pedagogical value, but also has very great practical value. Progress in historical study is largely dependent upon the growing skill with which the student can infer accurately and rapidly the content of events as they pass in quick review before the imagination. The power to do this has direct and important bearing on the affairs of every-day life. What else are men doing who meet each other in the various walks of life? Men contend or men coöperate in the conduct of all the institutions of human society. But to do either well—intelligently and successfully—they must penetrate to ideas, motives, and plans through the deeds of one another. How poorly we judge of the conduct of men and of society! There is need that teachers of history recognize and utilize the capacity in their own subject to confer upon the student this peculiar guiding power.

The exercise of the historical judgment in the process of interpretation fosters the formation of a most valuable habit of mind,—the habit of questioning appearances. This is not only an important historical habit, but it is of great thinking value to the non-historical student, for its tendency is to force the mind to look through appearances to reality—to look through phenomena to the laws of phenomena. Every act of historical interpretation gives the mind this tendency.

**Emotional Results of Interpretation.** The preceding

discussion of the educational value of interpretation has considered only intellectual processes and products. But some of the most valuable results of historical study pertain to the stimulus of emotions and the development of character. In the first place, the process of interpretation in history gives the rational basis for interest in the subject. It brings the mind of the student into direct contact with mind as it manifests itself in history; this is life in touch with life. The life of the student responds to the touch of the life of other men in other times. This is inevitable, for, as he touches the whole round of human experience as it is reflected in events, he will find much that is closely akin to his own. It seems strange, therefore, that any one should dislike history. About the only way to prevent a love of history from arising in the normal mind is to refuse it the opportunity of free and sympathetic contact with life—refuse to allow it to enter into the minds and hearts that lived and struggled as it lives and struggles. This is a pedagogical consideration of much importance when it is remembered that many pupils, and students, even, not only do not like history, but have a positive dislike for it. There are many artificial means used to create an interest in history, but the results are usually delusive because their resemblance to the real thing makes their detection very difficult. The pupil, and even the student, may be apparently interested in history because of an admiration for the teacher, or a desire to make a high record, or to stand well in the estimation of the class, or to be an honor student, or because of some taking device that the teacher, for the time being, employs to revive the lagging interest. None of these reaches the test of true interest; each represents a form of interest that deludes teachers, pupils, and students.

Interest in the thing for its own sake is the only genuine interest. Proper interpretation will give this.

In the second place, the intimate contact with the life of the past gained through a proper interpretation of events has a still deeper significance in its relation to the emotions,—it is the basis of an intelligent patriotism. In this sort of work the student lives over again the life he studies. He sympathizes with and admires men, parties, and nations in their struggles for a just cause. His heart warms to a noble idea or sentiment as he traces its conflict with prejudice and custom. On the other hand, he comes to despise the unjust cause and the efforts of men who live under the impulse of unworthy ideals and employ ignoble means. He is impressed with the idea that after a time the right comes to prevail, and that men and nations who turn their backs upon a good cause and deliberately choose the baser course will, in the end, pay dearly for their choice. He thus comes to feel a deep and abiding love for his own country and also a profound respect for the struggles of noble men of all lands.

A third feeling should develop from a study of history,—a love of truth. It is no small task to lead the student to draw correct conclusions and to prefer them to incorrect ones. It is so easy to make sweeping inferences from one instance. Besides, over the conflicts of ideas, ambitions, and interests it is difficult for the young to avoid being partisans. But in the hands of a skillful teacher there is no better subject to train for a love of truth than is history.

**Ethical Value of Interpretation.** When the student passes from the study of causes to the study of purposes and motives, his whole attitude of mind changes. From the very nature of the case, he is challenged to pass

judgment on the actors in the drama of passing events. He judges of their ability and sagacity in forming designs and in selecting means for their realization. In the purchase of Louisiana the student will say that Jefferson shows himself to be a farseeing and disinterested statesman, but that in his plan of coast defence he exhibits great ignorance of methods of war. In a similar way he will judge the statesmanship, on its intellectual side, of all the great and small men who have figured in our history. But on another side, and one having very intimate connection, as we have seen, with the question of right interpretation in history, the student is still more persistent in his determination to arraign men and measures before the bar of judgment; I mean the moral qualities of the motives which move men to action. In this field he would praise Washington and La Fayette for disinterested devotion to the cause of liberty, while he would have condemnation for the selfishness of Gates and Lee. He would extol John Quincy Adams for fidelity to principle both as president and as congressman. His admiration for Webster may turn to regret when he listens to the "Seventh of March" speech. Just as in the conduct of individuals, he will commend or condemn political parties for the motives that sway them.

This process may go on in the student more or less unconsciously. At least it may go on without the knowledge of the teacher, unless, by the character of the interpretation he stimulates the student to give frequent expression to his conclusions in this field. The fact that the student will reach such conclusions is a sufficient reason why the teacher should guide him in the process,—guide, but not dominate, his inferences. No other phase of historical interpretation opens up so widely the opportunity

for mistakes in judgment, even where the student is free from prejudice. He needs here, if ever, the guiding hand of one who has sought truth for its own sake—and found it. This guidance finds its best work, not in giving the student bald conclusions which he must accept because the teacher is supposed to be better authority than he is, but in leading him to gather sufficient data to make his own inferences reasonably true.

The reaction of this phase of study on the student is very profound but also very subtle. It is sometimes good and sometimes bad. The study of generous, broad-minded, unselfish conduct is ennobling in a high degree, but the student must come into contact with conduct of another sort. How rudely is he sometimes shocked when a great character whom he very much admires goes astray and devotes the energy of his mighty genius to an unworthy cause. The student in this formative period of mind sets his ideal high, and to find in men he admires any serious departure from this tends to shake his confidence in humanity. This is a result that certainly ought not to come about, and it need not. It ought not to come about because it is usually based on insufficient historical data, and is, therefore, not true to history. Again, it ought not to come about for the reason of its disastrous influence upon the ethical life of the student—it may make him cynical and pessimistic. The teacher may direct the interpretation of events in the light of purposes and motives so that the whole truth of history may be revealed and its ethical message to the student may not be perverted.

**How to Preserve Just Standards of Judgments.** Three things can the teacher do to prevent false interpretation: 1. He can show the student that unfair judgments may be reached by projecting his own standard and that of

the present into the past and by trying men and motives by them. The student has been taught the highest respect for the Constitution, and when he reads the story of Patrick Henry's vehement opposition to its ratification, the reputation, and perhaps the character, of that patriot falls in his estimation. He finds it difficult to reconcile Washington's love of liberty and his sacrifices for it, with his owning slaves; and even more so in the case of Henry Clay. But it is evident that in each instance the student is trying these men in the light of his own times. The teacher's duty is to make him truer to history, and then he will be truer to these men and truer to himself. 2. A second means may be used to preserve the ethical equilibrium of the student,—a judicious emphasis upon the lives of men who have been moral heroes, and there are plenty of such lives. The student, like the public in which he lives, takes it for granted that great men do good deeds, and so he is not particularly struck with the everyday life of good men as we have their acts in history. For the truth of history, then, the student should have his attention consciously directed to the influence of good men on the growth of our institutions. This will not be untrue to history, for the influence of the Arnolds, the Burrs, and others who have tried to harm the nation for personal ends, has been, comparatively speaking, very slight indeed. 3. We noticed in another paragraph that there is a tide in the affairs of men that seems not always to be of their own planning. It rides over their narrow, sordid, selfish purposes and makes for ends and results far beyond human comprehension. Or it may be a mighty wave of chastening public sentiment that rises and overturns the schemes of men, thus reaching some great end in the way of which men and parties stood. The selfishness and greed of men and parties have thus been punished by what

seemed an avenging public opinion. The American Revolution, the annihilation of the Whig party, and the defeat of the Democrats between 1854 and 1860, and the destruction of slavery by the proclamation of the son of a poor white in order to suppress armed resistance, are instances of great movements to secure great ends. These, and others like them, can give the student confidence in the ultimate triumph of right over wrong. They will also give him confidence in the ability of the American people to overthrow organized selfishness in whatever form it may appear.

## The Process of Coördination

### Nature of the Process

**The Basis of Coördination.** It has been said that the proper solution of the problem of the organization of knowledge in general, and of historical knowledge in particular, depends on discovering and utilizing the relations which exist between the particular facts and the fundamental principle of the subject.

Investigation will show that the facts of a subject embody its fundamental principle in various ways and in varying degrees. Translated into the language of history, this means that different events embody the growth of institutional ideas in different degrees. In carrying on the process of historical interpretation, the process by which the mind searches for the growth of ideas in events, the student is frequently struck by the richness with which some events, and the barrenness with which others, reveal the thoughts and feelings of the people.

**Theoretical and Practical Need.** In order to organize historical knowledge then, something more is necessary

than mere interpretation, however valuable that is or however perfectly it may be done. It is necessary, therefore, for the teacher to pass judgment upon the relative value of the facts or events to be interpreted. The practical need of this is very apparent in a field like history, where the facts are almost limitless in number, and where they range through all degrees of complexity. The life of one man like that of Franklin has almost innumerable incidents attending its course. The history of a single state numbers its facts almost without limit. What, then, must be true of the amount of matter that may be handled in dealing with the life of a great nation? There must be selection and emphasis here, or history must be given over as a disorganized and lawless subject.

There are few teachers who have not felt the pressing need of some means of selecting from the vast amount of matter to be found in text-books and libraries that particular portion having the highest historical significance. The small amount of time devoted to history, compared with the vast extent of the field, makes the question of selection and emphasis a really "practical" question. It comes every day alike to the teacher in the grades and the professor in the university. For the sake of truth and for the sake of the learner, each must make an attempt to solve the problem.

The ordinary way is to trust the text-books, but can they be trusted to settle the question of the relative value of events? Not many years ago a very popular text-book on United States history was issued that gave one-half of its pages to our history before the Revolution. If the teacher trust this text-book, her pupils may spend as much time on our history before 1760 as after it. The same text gives many pages to John Smith's exploits, and a very few lines to the establishment of representative

government in Virginia by Governor Yeardly,—an event full of destiny. King Philip's war in New England and the Body of Liberties established by Massachusetts in 1641 are treated after a similar fashion; about two hundred lines are given to the former and less than a dozen lines to the latter. A number of other text-books, while giving attention to King Philip's war, do not even mention the Body of Liberties, nor the early efforts of the Connecticut settlers at constitution-making. Illustrations may be multiplied to show that authors of school histories, as a rule, have no well-defined principle of selection or emphasis, and that the teacher who is guided by them alone will often go astray. Of course, we ought not to infer that an author in all cases expects teachers to value his material by the amount of space given it. In many cases, from the nature of the facts, the amount of space given to their narration must be out of proportion to their significance. But even if the teacher could trust the author to select and distribute his material according to its value, he would still need, in order to be free, a standard by which he could test the value of the material for himself. There is no growth for the teacher except through freedom conferred by working under the guidance of principles.

**The Principle Stated.** All these considerations, theoretical and practical, demand that the principle of selection and emphasis in history be a fundamental one,— one to which the student and teacher may appeal with some degree of certainty. This standard must not be an accidental one; it must not be set up by the whim of any person and be changed with a change of teachers, but must be one derived from the very essence of history itself— from the relations that exist between its facts and its organizing principle. Since the events of history express

the growth of institutional life in different degrees, it must follow that they will have historical value in proportion to their content. We may safely set up the growth of institutional life as the standard for making this test of historical value. To state the principle somewhat formally, it may be said that that event, series, or period has the highest historical value which reveals most fully the people's institutional thought and feeling. Such a fact takes highest rank. On the other hand, that event, series, or period which yields the least historical significance will take lowest rank in the subject.

**Suggestions as to Application.** There are two phases of this question of historical selection. The teacher, like the author, must first choose between the facts to be omitted and those to be taken. In the second place, a careful measure of the relative value of those selected must be made. The utility of our standard of selection is apparent from the fact that we must appeal to it in making our choice in each case. Why should any fact in American history be omitted and another fact selected? The only logical answer is that the fact rejected does not sufficiently reveal to the student the growth of institutional life. Why should De Soto's expedition form a part of a course in American history, while a hundred other Spanish explorers and their work go unnamed? The only reason is that the work of De Soto had a more intimate connection with our institutions than had those omitted. If one had to choose between the work of George Rogers Clark and that of Daniel Boone, in the Revolution, on what basis should the choice be made? Whose work contributed most to the development of the American institutions, would be the question to put. The answer to this question is the answer to the other question. Problems like these come to the teacher when he attempts

to make his own working outline, or when, for the lack of time, he must omit portions of this history text or spend little time upon them. The rational answer in each case is to be found in the relation of the fact to the fundamental or organizing principle.

It is this phase of the question which presses constantly upon the teacher and the one that has most to do with the distribution of the pupil's time and energy. This question has been variously designated: some call it "historical emphasis," others, "historical perspective." Whatever the name, the principle is the same, and in its application has to do with deciding between the relative value of periods or series of events, between the members of the series, and between features of each event.

In dealing with the relative value of these forms of historical facts, the teacher can save time for the student by deciding in a general way the relative amount of study that is to be given to the various periods of history. After this is disposed of, the next question of relative values arises from within the periods. Each period, it will be learned, is marked by a dominant movement in institutional growth. This dominant movement furnishes the leading content for interpretation, and also the standard for the relative value of the various series of events that are found within the period. The next problem relates to the relative value of the various series constituting the period; these express in different degrees the fundamental idea of the period, hence have different historical values and are, therefore, entitled to attention and emphasis in like proportion. But the problem of relative values has at least one more important phase: Which is the greatest and which is the least event in the series? A series is such by virtue of a dominant idea, which idea is either some phase of the dominant idea of

the period or is vitally connected with it. How the events of the series embody this sub-idea is the test of their respective values.

**Application to Time and Place.** It is desirable, if not necessary, here to call attention to the value of certain external features of events. Two in particular, time and place, or chronology and geography, ought to be carefully considered. As ordinarily viewed these two features or accompaniments of events pertain rather to the external side than to the content of events. When so viewed they can have little or no historical value. This ought to suggest, to teachers of dates and dots on maps, that there is possibly something wrong in the venerable custom of committing to memory long lists of dates and places of events. Let us search for a rational basis for judging the place of chronology and geography in history.

Growth in institutional ideas is, as we have seen, along lines parallel in time. Events are located along these lines of growth at intervals of time, this location serving as a means of marking off the stages in the development of ideas. It facilitates interpretation to know the place in time an event occupies along this line. Its location, however, includes more than knowing its mere date; for we may know the date of an event as an abstract and empty thing, out of all relation to other events and therefore miss all suggestion as to its content. The fixing of an event in time must be by associating with it events and phases of thought that precede, succeed, and are simultaneous in time. It often occurs that the association of historical facts in the order of time suggests that they may be more fundamentally related as cause and effect, or that there may be a similarity of significance. Whenever time associations are made among such facts

it must be remembered that it is never for the sake of the date. This fact rightly understood will prevent the pernicious practice of committing to memory long lists of dates with only the name of the event attached.

Institutions must grow somewhere, and the place in which a people's life develops exerts a powerful influence over it. Not only do climatic influences modify man's physical activity, but his spiritual as well; in one region physical conditions favor reflection while in another they stimulate sensuous enjoyments. The physical differences between the North and the South partly caused their wide contrasts in institutional life, and through the latter the Civil War. Differences in occupations are largely based on variations in physical conditions; conflicting interests may thus arise that show their influence on legislation. The distribution of relief forms and waterways may determine the direction of trade and the movement of armies. The Hudson River and Lake Champlain region determined the direction and plan of more than one campaign in both the Inter-colonial and the Revolutionary wars. The same thing is true in a greater degree, of the rivers Mississippi, Ohio, Potomac, and James, in our Civil War. It is clear from these facts that the relation of place, like that of time, is a key to knowledge under higher relations. But if the place of an event, including its surroundings, cannot be seen as an active agent transforming ideas and producing events, then its historical value is very small indeed. The bald location on the map of all the places named in the text is almost useless work. In other words, portions of the map are located instead of events in their real geographical relations. This gives the imagination no aid in picturing the physical surrounding of things, and has little historical value. The map is a means in history, whether furnished by the book or made by the

pupil. The historical map may be made by the student, if in the making he gains something of historical value. It should be accurate, rather than beautiful; the end attained is an historical idea and not an æsthetic emotion.

**Results of the Application.** There must be great economy in time and energy when the teacher has decided in advance the most important period, the most important series of events in the period, and the most important event in the series. Not only is there great economy in time and energy, but what an immeasurable difference between the student's conception of the subject under this plan, and his hazy and bewildered state of mind under the old plan of "going it blind"! The result of testing periods, parts of periods, and events in this way will lead to the discovery of a number of things:

1. That the value of a period or other series of events is not determined by the length of time covered.

2. That some events and series are of such a character and the manner of treatment by certain authors is such that a single reading is all they merit; they may be put in to fill out the picture or to make the connection between more important events.

3. That a single fact may be so close to the people's life that a series of lessons may be spent on it.

4. That this distribution of time and effort will break up the uniform and featureless whole given by the simple process of interpretation, and will create a body of knowledge full of variety, each fact occupying the rank determined by its own value.

### EDUCATIONAL VALUE OF COÖRDINATION

We now come to the pedagogical significance of the process of judging relative values. It has already been stated that there are at least two phases to this question:

one of knowledge, the other of discipline. There is possibly another phase by inference from these two, namely, what must be done by the teacher in the light of the answer to the other two. This has been partly discussed above.

**Effect as to Knowledge.** It has already been made clear that, for complete organization, the material given in interpretation must then be coördinated and subordinated,—that is, arranged in a system on the basis of its historical significance. This result removes the great body of historical facts another step from chaos, the first being unity and diversity through interpretation; now, they are made to assume rank in the subject in light of the place they hold in the life of a people. In most subjects the parts and particular facts have a place and rank that is fairly well recognized. Not so in the subject of history. While it may never be possible to rank the facts of history as perfectly as those of many other subjects, yet the loose and reckless manner in which they are often handled by teachers shows that a reasonable attempt ought to be made in this direction. Perhaps not much effort in ranking the facts of history has been made because of the nature of the facts; but mainly, it is because no coördinating and subordinating principle has been generally accepted. Why has no principle been generally accepted? Chiefly, I think, because students have not clearly differentiated between the form and the content of history.

There is another way in which this process affects the student's knowledge, that is, by adding to it. When the conclusion is reached that the battle of Lexington is a more important event than the storming of Stony Point—one of the most brilliant military events of the Revolutionary War—the student has added to his stock a fact more valuable than if he had added a dozen mere incidents connected with these events. Many pupils in the public

schools and students in higher institutions can state interesting things connected with the purchase of Louisiana and Florida; but, knowing little about their relative importance, cannot explain which produced the greater effect upon the dominant movement of that period. Would it not really be adding to their knowledge of history to discover which produced the greater result upon the life and the thought of the time?

**Confers Power to properly Judge Contemporaneous Events.** On the side of discipline a far greater result is produced by training in the ranking of men and events. We have seen how interpretation gives ability and skill in getting into the content of contemporaneous events. Now, experience in determining the relative rank of past events ought to confer the power and skill to estimate similar present facts at their true value. It is not an easy thing to estimate present movements at their true value, and few there are who do not need more of this sort of ability — few who do not make grave mistakes for lack of power to balance men and their conduct, parties and their policies, institutions and their ends and tendencies. People are influenced by new movements because they are new; some become absorbed in a small, quiet movement with a great principle behind it, while others are caught and held by great noisy commotions with little or nothing of principle. Others allow a single idea to fill their attention and absorb their energy to the exclusion of all other ideas, until they come to see it out of its true proportion. All other ideas and movements come to such men through the wrong end of the telescope. It would seem, therefore, that the power cultivated by the process of coördinating and subordinating the facts of history — balancing events, men, and motives — is of great practical value in the contest of life.

# ORGANIZATION OF THE PHASES OF AMERICAN HISTORY

## PERIOD OF THE GROWTH OF LOCAL INSTITUTIONS

### The Relation of Discoveries and Explorations to this Period

**Not a Coördinate Phase of Institutional Life.** The separation of our history into four great phases does not include as one of its parts the discoveries and explorations that opened up America to Europe. A division made by searching for differences in the growth of institutional ideas cannot recognize these events as constituting one of its organic parts. They do not mark a movement in the thought of the American people, for the ideas that called these events into being were European and hence belong primarily to the domain of general history, or to the history of their respective nations. It does not follow, however, that, with the fundamental basis developed in the preceding discussions, there is no place for these events in our history. On the contrary, their rank in the subject is determined by the same method that fixes the rank of any other series of events. If they touch the development of American institutions, past or present, in any appreciable way, then they have some rank, but what particular rank must be determined by the amount and kind of this connection.

**Their True Connection and Rank.** In general it may be said that the discoveries and explorations of the different European nations tended to fix the place where each planted its institutions in America. The place where

ideas and institutions grow influences their development. Climate touches human life in many ways, determining animal and plant life, affecting the production of food, clothing, and shelter, and influencing population and social customs. The presence or absence of a fertile soil, rich mineral deposits, and navigable lakes and rivers give bent to industrial life, and through this reaches into the domain of politics. For these reasons the student must take some account of the place where a new France, a new Spain, and a new England are to grow and do battle for existence.

For another reason the place of discoveries and explorations must be noted: the claims to ownership of soil were based upon these events, and out of overlapping claims came much of colonial history that shaped the course of future events. Our organizing principle makes us say, then, that the process of interpretation for a voyage of discovery and exploration consists in showing how it tended to fix a place for the growth of a group of institutions. This same principle makes it clear that the expedition having most to do in fixing or extending this region is the most important one in the series belonging to a given nation. To put it in another way, it may be said that the teacher, in order to direct his pupils intelligently, must know two things about each event in such series: (1) what the event contributed to the claims of the nation sending out the expedition; (2) how the work of this expedition compares with that accomplished by others.

In settling these points, questions will arise in the teacher's mind: Shall the student be permitted to learn only the bare facts about the voyage of Ponce de Leon? Our organizing principle does not exclude any knowledge of this voyage that enables one to understand how it tended to confirm or extend Spanish claims. But whether the Fountain of Youth ought to be studied in connection

with this voyage is determined by its bearing on the confirmation or extension of Spanish claims and the great number of interesting incidents connected with this expedition.

What ought to be done with the great expedition of De Soto? The organizing idea of history forces each teacher to ask this question: Did De Soto's expedition touch directly or indirectly the growth of institutions? The answer is that it did so, very remotely, by confirming and extending Spanish claims to territory in North America. Very well, then, this principle directs us to study this expedition until the extent of De Soto's contribution is determined. But what about De Soto's wife, left as Governor of Cuba, and the great number of interesting incidents connected with this expedition? If they bear on the solution of this problem, then they must be noticed —it may be, only noticed. The same principle will apply to the voyages of other nations that planted institutions in North America.

From the nature of the case, English explorations have a closer connection with American history than do those of other nations. Our institutions have grown out of English ideas, in the main, and in the place which English voyages prepared for them. For this reason, English voyages should be studied with more care than those of other nations. There seems to be an exception in the case of the first voyage of Columbus. His first voyage, historically speaking, was a world-voyage having much significance for other nations as well as for Spain. Hence, it must occupy high rank in this preliminary part of our history.

From the fact that the discoveries and explorations, taken as a whole, have, comparatively, a small influence on the growth of our institutions, they cannot be erected into a coördinate part of the history of the United States;

but because of their immediate relation to the localization and planting of European ideas in America, they of right constitute an introduction to the period that deals with the transformation of European ideas into colonial institutions.

**Non-American History.** Attention has been called to the fact that not all the voyages to America belong in the category of American history. In fact, much time may be easily wasted in a study of events that are really no part of American history unless one takes a very mechanical view of history, and holds that all events occurring in America form a part of its history. This would make the history of the North American Indians a part of American history, but certainly no one will say that in any true historical sense did Indian institutions flow into or become a part of American institutions. And yet it is no uncommon thing for a teacher to be found earnestly at work teaching the history of the North American Indian without any conception of the proper limit of such study. The same is true of Mound-builders and the theories of their origin and modes of life. Nor do the ordinary texts give much guidance. None will deny the deep interest that attaches to these subjects, but the charm of interest cannot be the basis for passing judgment upon their position as facts in American history. There is but one test, the relation which they sustain to the growth of American institutions. The extent to which they influenced our history is the true measure of their value. When any fact is taught about explorations, Indians, or Mound-builders, which has no connection with our institutional life, such a fact is in the field of non-American history.

## The Period as a Whole

**What Constitutes a Period.** It has just been shown that discoveries and explorations do not constitute a

period. What constitutes one may be inferred partly from preceding discussions, but something more definite is now needed. The period, or epoch, is the largest and most complex historical division. Fundamentally, it is one of the coördinate phases of institutional growth which go to make up the totality of a people's life. A period exists by virtue of the fact that a great movement in the life of the people dominates events for a given time. This epochal movement sets off its own time and events from those which precede and those which succeed it; it is, therefore, a differentiating idea. Were it not so, periods would be, in relation to each other, mere artificial inventions depending upon, and varying with, the whim of the writer or teacher. Not only does the dominant movement do this, but it also forms the common content of the facts of its own period, and thus performs the function of integration. Fundamentally, an event without this common content does not belong to the period, even if it occurs within the usual chronological limits of that period.

**Nature of this Period.** We have found already that the stream of American institutional life exhibits four great phases, and that the first of these is marked by being mainly concerned with the rise and growth of local institutions. From the manner of settlement the ideas and customs out of which these institutions grew were planted in groups more or less isolated, and throughout the period there was little inter-communication. The physical barriers to this were very great. The distance between settlements was immense. Rivers, mountains, dense forests, savage beasts, and more savage men were almost insuperable obstacles to coöperation, even if the disposition had existed. To this must be added the very slow means of travel which in those days separated colonial

capitals by hundreds of miles. In the early part of the period, little conscious need of communication between governments arose except in New England. Direct official connection with England tended to prevent communication among the colonies on political matters. For the most part, politics was entirely a matter of local concern. Therefore this is the period when the forms and functions of local self-government had full and free development, when the government of the American town and township, county and state had their genesis. The same tendency prevailed in religious affairs, each colony following the dictation of local considerations. In fact, religious differences emphasized the isolation of colonial institutions, for the spirit of persecution was not entirely absent. Similarly, each colony followed its own ideas and prejudices in matters of education and social life.

Perhaps commerce was the only thread that bound the colonies together, with the feeling that, independently of all external dangers, each produced something which the other wanted. In addition, it may be noticed that the people felt the tie of race when thinking of themselves in relation to Spaniards, Frenchmen, and Indians. But this feeling came only in times of external danger. Whatever germs of connection and union may have existed in this period were overshadowed by the facts and conditions of institutional isolation. Preëminently, then, it was an age for the development of local interests and institutions; and we may safely conclude that the origin and development of such ideas and institutions is the organizing idea of this period.

**The Organizing Idea at Work.** It has already been explained as an important principle of organization that the differentiating and the integrating idea must be identical; that is, the idea which separates this period from the

other parts of American history, and the parts of the period from each other, must be the idea that unites all the parts of this period into a whole. This we have already found to be the growth of local institutions, mainly out of European ideas and customs. It is this idea, seen as the content of the leading events of the period, that interprets and integrates them, that puts meaning into them and joins them as a whole. This same idea furnishes the standard for determining the relative value of the events of the period, thus giving them coördination and subordination as parts in an organic whole.

**Phases of the Period.** In order to be more specific, it is necessary to subdivide the period and search for more concrete organizing ideas. It must be ever in mind that the real parts of a period are to be found by looking for differences in its organizing idea — differences, in this instance, in the growth of local institutional ideas. A discriminating study of life in this time will reveal three forms pretty well differentiated. They do not, however, result from progressive evolution, but are, rather, three parallel streams of institutional ideas that run throughout the entire period. It is discovered that these differences coincide, in the main, with the familiar geographical regions of colonial times. It may be stated, then, that in New England there was a movement toward a general diffusion of rights and privileges, while in the southern group the movement was in the opposite direction, toward the centralization of rights and privileges. In the middle group there was a partial blending of the two movements.

### The Diffusion of Rights and Privileges

**Why the New Differentiation is Made.** These differences in the growth of local institutions are not discovered

for their own sake merely, but that they may serve the mind further in the process of organization. It is to this end that all separations — analyses — are made in any science, for it is only by this process that deeper and more perfect integrations — syntheses — are possible. Analysis, alone, may annihilate a subject, reducing it to isolated fragments. To avoid this, and to attain the highest result as to discipline and knowledge, the act of synthesis must invariably follow. In the present case each phase of local colonial life must be organized under a new and more concrete principle. If life in New England is differentiated from that in other groups by a movement tending to the diffusion of rights and privileges, then this same idea must connect New England life into a whole.

**The Organizing Principle in the Concrete.** Let us look at some of the leading facts of New England history to see if they contain this principle. The charter of the Massachusetts Bay colony gave twenty-six persons almost unlimited power. Before leaving England with this charter, other persons, by vote of its members, were admitted to the rights and privileges of the corporation. In 1631 suffrage was extended to approved church members. New Haven was the only other colony in the group that extended the privileges of voting no further than to church members, while Rhode Island was more liberal still. In 1632 the settlers at Watertown refused to pay taxes levied by the assistants. This led, in 1634, to the establishment of representative government in Massachusetts. The body of assistants and representatives were separated into two houses, thus forming the Upper and Lower Houses of Colonial times, which division has persisted to our own day. In 1635 the judiciary was made more popular by establishing local courts, whose

sessions were held in the various towns. About this time was legalized the town meeting, the most democratic institution of that age, another New England feature persisting to the present. In respect to most of these points, Plymouth, Connecticut, and Rhode Island were even more progressive. In 1641 Massachusetts established the famous Body of Liberties,—a sort of Magna Charta, as was said. This document was submitted to the towns of the colony, and is remarkable for the advanced ideas set forth as to the rights of individuals. The existence of a party in Massachusetts in favor of the ideas of Roger Williams and Mrs. Hutchinson[1] proves a movement toward differentiation in religious thought, and the fact that many who did not agree with them did not favor their banishment proves a tendency toward toleration. This tendency grew stronger and had much to do in causing the authorities to stop the persecution of the Quakers, and in the witchcraft delusion public sentiment opened the prisons and cheated the gallows of some of its victims. This sentiment ultimately led Massachusetts to make reparation to the descendants whose ancestors had suffered. And later, both Massachusetts and Connecticut relieved Quakers and Baptists from ecclesiastical dues. In Rhode Island there was always more generous religious fellowship among sects than in Massachusetts. The gradual growth of toleration was the natural result of conflicting sects — a result that reaches our own time. The Puritan church organization was thoroughly democratic. The local congregation was sovereign.

The New England public school! That of itself tells the story. No other institution in its day did so much to bring the same opportunity to every man's child. The

[1] The parties to these controversies were all Puritans — a fact that is generally overlooked in most of our text-books.

founding of the college and the establishment of the printing-press were other facts that point toward the diffusion of opportunity. But what of industry? Soil, climate, mode of settling, the presence of the sea, and the great forest filled with timber and animals—all favored variety of occupation. This resulted, naturally, in the distribution rather than in the concentration of wealth; at least, it gave equal opportunity and a just return for labor. The Puritan family in England was freer from the coloring of aristocracy than was any other, yet, on removing to America, it brought many an English custom. But the great movements indicated were powerful social levelers. Puritan legislation began to grow into a new mold, and in 1641 the Body of Liberties struck some severe blows at the English method of transmitting property. What we have seen to be true of New England colonial life, was, in large measure, true of the institutional development of the entire North to the present time.

The truth of the organizing idea of New England history seems to be sufficiently attested by every great feature of that historical group, as far as New England could control her own destiny. It is this idea that the student must find in the individual facts of New England history. When New England's life has been thus interpreted and we see in the events essentially the same idea, the mind has joined them into an intelligible whole due to the inherent force of a great dominant idea. And when each fact is measured as to the extent and degree of this content, we may say that each fact has taken its appropriate rank in the whole—that each is seen in its true historical perspective.

**Principle Governing the Conduct of New England toward English Authority.** The events organized above

belong to the internal development of New England. There are other events growing immediately out of the relations between the colonies and the mother country. In whatever form the conflict of authority between them expressed itself, the New England colonists were determined to preserve and increase their rights and privileges. It was a principle, always more or less consciously guiding them, to exercise as much power as possible and to resist all encroachments upon it. This is clearly seen in the first great controversy between 1634 and 1636, when, on account of charges against the colony, Massachusetts was ordered by an English court to surrender its charter. The Governor and Council refused to make answer, while the ministers of the colony resolved that "we ought to defend our lawful possessions." The General Court, or colonial legislature, ordered that new forts be erected, and that the people be trained in the use of arms. The danger was averted by the crisis in England, and did not return till 1646, when the Long Parliament held sway. This body claimed the right to reverse the decisions of the colonial legislature, and also to give to Massachusetts a new charter. Both of these claims were viewed as aggressions by the colony, and were so strongly opposed that parliament did not push matters to a crisis. Soon after the Restoration Charles II sent orders to Massachusetts to remove the religious qualifications for suffrage, permit the English Church to hold meetings, and to have all legal documents run in the king's name. There was so much opposition to these changes, and some were made so reluctantly, while others were not made at all, that royal commissioners were sent over in 1664. News of their coming having reached Boston, the colonial authorities ordered a fast, a committee was given charge of the charter, the trainbands were

authorized to practice, and other military preparations were made. The opposition to the work of the commissioners prevented any encroachments upon chartered rights. In the battle of the New England colonies for their charters, and in their temporary defeat in the days of Andros, the same principle of action controlled the people and their authorities.

Therefore, for the series of events growing out of the relations between New England and the mother country, the determination of the colonists to preserve, and, if possible, increase their rights and privileges, becomes the organizing idea. The teacher will note that this idea and motive will be found as content in all the events entering into the series, and also that this series, as a whole, organizes into proper relations, with the series of events embodying the diffusion of rights and opportunities. This latter we have seen to be the principle of their domestic development, and it was for the preservation of this internal life that the fierce opposition to England's encroachments was made.

### Centralization of Rights and Opportunities

**Nature of this Organizing Idea.** The above heading is taken as a statement of the most fundamental movement common to the institutions of the southern group of colonies. An attempt to organize the facts of southern colonial history around this idea will be found more difficult than the organization of New England history around the opposite principle. This difficulty grows out of the fact that the political life of the southern group was more frequently interrupted by conflicts of the people with the officials of the crown or with proprietors, and hence its political development was not left as undisturbed, and was not allowed to follow its natural tendency as completely

as in New England. A practical difficulty also confronts the teacher or student who searches for events and facts bearing on the internal history of the group; for while most of our historians have been diligent in giving us pictures of the political collisions[1] mentioned above, they have not described very fully the events that attended the gradual absorption of power and influence by the slaveholders. This movement, by which political, social, cultural, and industrial opportunities were practically concentrated in the hands of the planters, was in the main a silent process. It went on, generation after generation, without obtruding itself upon the consciousness of the colonists; but it was none the less fundamental and permanent in its character.

**General Causes of the Movement.** The soil of the southern colonies was exceedingly fertile, thus making agriculture so easy and remunerative that it practically became their one great occupation. No other occupation in this section could compete with it, and thus the opportunity for variety of labor was greatly limited. Besides, the warm climate made possible the production of certain plants, like tobacco, rice, indigo, and cotton. From the nature of these plants and their physical environment, the cultivation of them was simple; it could be performed by unskilled labor. These conditions made slave labor possible, and the great heat of the section made it seem desirable. The employment of the slave soon taught the planters that an increase in profit was to be gained by increasing the number of slaves. The result of this was an increase in the size of the plantation to give room for

[1] There is no doubt of the historical significance of these conflicts, for they tended to keep alive the spirit of opposition to encroachments on the rights of the colonies, but it must be remembered that they constitute only one phase of one portion of the people's life.

more slaves. The tendency of family pride was also in the direction of more slaves and more acres. The planters therefore absorbed the most desirable of the agricultural lands.

**Economical Aspects of the Movement.** The first form of slavery was not negro slavery, but it was a system of indentured service, by means of which the planters obtained white laborers for a term of years by paying their passage to America, or by buying their labor from companies who made a business of bringing them over. After his term of service the indentured laborer was turned loose — ignorant, poor, and often vicious — to shift for himself. These people furnished the beginnings of that class which, later, was the product of negro slavery — the poor whites. To the indentured servant after his contract expired, and to other non-slaveholders, three things were open: 1. They could be day-laborers, the easiest and most likely thing to be done. In this they came into either direct or indirect competition with the negro slave. Not only did the presence of the slave give them less work to do, but for the part that fell to them the wages were small, from the fact that the cheaper form of labor was always present. 2. They could emigrate, and thus remove themselves from the immediate presence of slavery. They moved out upon the frontier or up into the mountains, where lands were cheaper, and became independent farmers on a small scale. The more enterprising settlers direct from Europe, not yet affected by contact with slavery, furnished by far the greater number of border farmers. But even this more ambitious class felt the unequal contest with slavery. The products of their more humble efforts had to go into the same market and compete with the products of the plantation. If the non-slaveholders were still more ambitious, and if

their knowledge was equal to their ambition, they frequently crossed the border into the northern or middle colonies, where competition was more normal. 3. Finally, it was barely possible, but not probable, that they might become slaveholders on a small scale.

Slavery gave the planter leisure, but it added to the time the non-slave-holder must work if he hoped to gain a competence or even the comforts of life. Slavery gave wealth to the planter, but denied it to the non-slaveholder. The tendency, economically, was to put the wealth of the colony into the hands of planters.

**Social and Educational Effects.** In no other form of southern institutional life is the reign of the principle of growth, stated in the beginning, more strikingly apparent than in social life. The gulf between the family of the slaveholder and the family of the non-slaveholder was almost impassable. The immediate causes of this contrast in social standing are found in the fact that one family had wealth, leisure, and refinement, while the other was poor and had to labor,—conditions akin to slavery,—and was often marked by the absence of refinement and intelligence. On one side was family pride, ancestry, acres, and slaves; on the other was a family often lacking in everything which constitutes the basis of family pride, with poverty often as deep as that of the slave, and even more pitiable, and with ignorance so dense as to be entirely unconscious. Naturally, there could be but little fellowship between families so widely separated.

In the southern group there were few public schools such as were known in New England. In the absence of general and public means of education there was little opportunity for the non-slaveholder to educate his children. If he was above the average non-slaveholder

in point of wealth, the parson or some indigent scholar might be found to tutor them. Sometimes a substitute was discovered in the person of an indented servant. But all these results were only a few drops in the great ocean of ignorance. Thus it seems that the lack of education was a means to perpetuate the condition of the non-slaveholder. In contrast with this, the children of the planter could have an education. Many of them had private tutors. Some went to the College of William and Mary, others to northern schools, while the children of the more wealthy and ambitious went abroad for their schooling. This disparity between the two classes in education had much to do in perpetuating social and other differences.

**How the Principle Worked in Politics and in Religion.** With all these differences of wealth, family position, and education, it is not only not a matter of surprise, but was the most natural and fitting thing that the slaveholders should fill leading positions. It was practically necessary that they be the recipients of political preferment at the hands of the crown and of the people. No other class in this group could furnish men who could measure up to the needs of colonial government. It was not unnatural that, with political power mainly in their hands, they should be tempted to use it to promote their own interests. This was accomplished in many ways; but the most effective was the requirement of a given land qualification for suffrage, and a larger one for office-holding. Add to these the custom of the crown or proprietor of appointing only persons of high degree to places in the upper house of the colonial legislature, and we have all the conditions for the concentration of political power and influence in the hands of one class. The plantation system gave to the southern group a scanty white population with very

few towns and the county system of government. Both endured to the Civil War.

How about religious thought and feeling? Do they grow under the same law? So far as social and political interests touched religious customs and machinery, the tendency was to put their control in the hands of the aristocratic element. Where the English Church was the dominant organization in this group of colonies there was little to prevent concentration.

The peculiarity of all sides of life in the southern colonies, which we have been studying, did not, as might be expected, unfit the slaveholders for active and aggressive work in the Revolution. The love of personal and political independence was as strong as it was in the feudal lords who snatched English liberty from King John. And in the southern colonies, where the favors of the crown did not stifle it, this old spirit flared up as quickly as in the more democratic regions of New England. There were some features of the war that were not found in the North, but the centralization of power and privilege did not seriously check its progress in the southern section.

**Conclusion.** The above discussion is historical, rather than pedagogical. It has, however, this bearing on the process of thinking: by it we have demonstrated the existence of a law of growth in southern colonial life, which law is to play the part of the "organizing idea" of the history of this group, at least so far as internal influences are concerned.

It may not be amiss to suggest that the colonies be studied in groups rather than as isolated colonies. The student, in his first study, should, perhaps, take each one in detail, but a second going over the subject, if only in review, should be devoted to laying emphasis on the features common to the members of the same group.

This should be done for the sake of the knowledge as well as for the reason that time may be saved. The knowledge thus gained will have in it an element not to be had by studying isolated colonies; it will show the student that the great overshadowing features of life in one member were to be found in the other members of the same group. For purposes of historical interpretation this will entirely suffice. It seems that the principle of concrete expression of ideas and customs would be fully satisfied by selecting a representative colony of each group, say, Massachusetts for the northern, Virginia for the southern, New York and Pennsylvania for the middle group.

**The Principle Governing the Attitude of the Southern Colonists toward English Authority.** If we analyze the events touching the relations between England and this group of colonies, we shall discover in the southern group the same state of sentiment as was found in New England, — a determination to exercise for themselves as much power as possible, and to oppose all encroachments, whether made directly by king and parliament, or indirectly by the colonial governors. This attitude is found in Virginia, when James I took the charter from the London Company, when Charles I made an effort to get control of the tobacco trade or sided with Governor Harvey, when Cromwell sent his war vessels and commissioners, and when Bacon defied the authority of Governor Berkeley. Likewise in the Carolinas, whether they were contending with proprietors under Locke's Grand Model, or contesting the aggressions of colonial governors appointed by the king, the same principle of conduct animated them. Because of her internal disturbances, Maryland presents fewer cases of conflict with king and governors than either Virginia or the Carolinas; but where cases of invaded rights were clear,

the settlers of Maryland proved their right to be regarded as true Englishmen.

In discussing New England's relation to English authority, we found that the events connected therewith grew out of the people's efforts to maintain securely the institutional life of the group, especially as related to politics, religion, and commerce. The same relation exists in the southern group between these two series of events. The opposition here was not for its own sake, but for the purpose of protecting the institutions of the colonies from dangerous encroachments which tended to limit the participation of the people in their functions.

## The Middle Colonies

**Internal Institutional Growth.** The diversity of races, of religious and political institutions in this group makes it impossible to discover a dominant movement in colonial times for the group as a whole. Here we have a population foreshadowing that of our times. Here were the Dutch, Swedes, Germans, Scotch, Welsh, Irish, and English. Each was wedded to the ideas and institutions of his native land, and thus presented many barriers to the development of a characteristic tendency in internal affairs. New York partook, to some extent, of the characteristics of New England, especially late in the colonial period, but in its early days, Dutch influence was paramount; it did not, however, extend into other colonies. New Jersey and Delaware were much influenced by their proximity to the southern group, and the latter became a slave state. The conditions favoring diversity in Pennsylvania were so great that it had little in common with the other members of the group. Thus it appears that no law of development can be found for this group as a whole unless it be the law of diversity. This makes the

organization of the history of this group as a whole quite unsatisfactory. No doubt an analysis of the internal life of each colony would present some idea to serve as its organizing principle, but work so detailed hardly belongs to the scope of the present discussion.

**Attitude of Middle Colonies toward English Authority.** While it may be difficult to discover an internal movement common to all the members of the middle group of colonies, it is not at all difficult to find the common principle animating the people of each colony with reference to extension of English authority. Particularly is this true of the two great members of the group,—New York and Pennsylvania. Almost from the day of their birth, the people of these two colonies were in conflict with their respective local authorities, whose functions and powers were drawn from royal authority. Sometimes the opposition was in the minority, but it kept on its struggle. In many cases the victory was only defensive, and simply held what had been gained, but from 1700 to the Revolution the people became aggressive and won real advances in rights and opportunities.

We thus discover that a common principle of action controlled the people of all the colonies in dealing with questions relating to the extension of British authority over them. This gives us a common interpreting and coördinating principle for all events falling under this category. Of course, with reference to the future, the discovery of this common content is full of significance, for it shows the gradual divergence of English and American political ideas, and that the spirit of the Revolution was born of a century or more of rough experience with English officials.

**Suggestions as to Closing a Period.** In closing a period, the teacher must see that the students take a new view—

not the old view—of the period: 1. A restatement of the period movements and sub-period movements. 2. Have them mark off each movement by dates and events. 3. Require a statement of the institutional lessons for practical purposes, taught by the period. 4. Give events or movements which bear striking resemblances or differences to events or movements of the present day. 5. State ideas or movements which we have inherited from this period.

The facts under point "5" are so important and so seldom given in texts that a statement covering some of these points, may be permitted. 1. The colonial government furnished material, largely, for state and national governments. Local institutions, such as the county, township, and village governments are perpetuated today in our local institutions. 2. The separation of the legislative from the executive, and both from the judiciary was born in the colonial times. 3. The presence of conflicting sects of religions gave America religious freedom. 4. Out of colonial germs sprang the free school idea. 5. The two systems of labor planted in colonial days gave us two contrasting systems of industry and their consequences. 6. The survival of English institutions in the conflicts with Spain and with France. 7. England's lack of wisdom in dealing with the colonies was most marked in the closing days of the period and in the opening of the next.

## PERIOD OF THE GROWTH OF UNION

### The Period as a Whole

**The Transition from Isolation to Union.** The law of differentiation operating in history makes every age a period of transition. The law of continuity, however, so controls the movement of the dominant idea that its growth consists in merely passing from one stage of itself to another. But what may be termed transitions proper are changes marked either by the appearance of new ideas and sentiments, or by new growth in the old ideas, amounting to new movements. These transitions proper are most marked on the border lines between periods, and are usually characterized by events whose content partakes of both the old and the new movement.

The transition in the present case marks the passage from the first to the second of the great coördinate movements in American institutional life. If the student is to be guided by the laws of growth, he must search for the germs of the second period far back in the midst of the first. One of these, the tie of race, has already been mentioned. The English colonists felt that they were one against Indians, Spaniards, and Frenchmen. Even in the first portion of the colonial era England made the Americans feel that her commercial interest and theirs were not identical. The renewal and extension of the navigation laws under Charles II, the creation of the Boards of Trade under William and Mary, the limitations on the woolen trade in the same reign, the passage of the importation act of 1733, and many other limitations upon colonial industry, tended to strengthen this conviction. Out of these restrictions and this conviction, aided by the desire for gain, flourished the colonial smuggling trade.

American merchants and shippers, after the manner of Englishmen, troubled themselves very little about the moral questions, and soon there arose a loose sort of coöperation among the smugglers of the various ports; this was a germ of union that quickly developed into the merchant organizations of the Revolution. Another cause was England's siding with the governors in their quarrels with the colonists. While these contests over authority did not lead to any form of coöperation in the colonial time, yet they did create a state of mind which furnished a basis for it in later times. Another thread of sympathy existed in the first period,— danger from French and Indians. The danger was constant between 1690 and 1763, and was common to nearly all the colonies. That the English colonies so felt is abundantly proven by a long line of intercolonial meetings. Sometimes only the representatives of one group were present, but at one time or another all the colonies were thus in friendly consultation. The immediate result of these conferences was a series of coöperative military and naval expeditions against the common enemy. The inter-colonial wars and their attendant intercommunication prepared the way for union by breaking down some of the prejudices, religious and social, which various colonies entertained, and thus tended to remove barriers to union erected in the period of isolation. These examples prove that even in the period when local interests and institutions were dominant, new impulses were beginning to differentiate themselves from the prevailing condition and to move forward to the conquest of the future.

**The Period Proper.** The real nature of the thought-movement of this period is foreshadowed in the lines of growth already indicated. It is indeed a movement from isolation to union. The preceding discussion, however,

has not pointed out the special circumstances under which the impulse to union gained so mighty an impetus that it absorbed the energy of the whole people, and thus made it the dominant movement of an era. The inter-colonial wars left both England and America deeply in debt, and even before the close of the last one England began to devise means to raise a larger revenue in America. This determination led the custom-house officials of Boston to apply for Writs of Assistance as a means of breaking up smuggling. James Otis came to the rescue and made his great argument by appealing to the English constitution.[1] The result was regarded as a victory for all the colonies. The failure to enforce the old laws of trade led to their modification in 1763. This new law was a sort of confiscation act, because its most striking feature provided that the navy should be used to destroy the smuggling trade by seizing smuggled goods. It stimulated the cupidity of the naval officers, the governors, the judges, and the military officials by allowing them to share in the confiscations. Commerce with the West Indies was threatened with destruction. A storm of protests swept over to England. American commerce was greatly damaged, but England gained nothing. From now on, parliamentary legislation concerning America produced at each step the same results,—drove the colonies farther from England and closer to one another. The Stamp Act brought in its train colonial correspondence, non-importation societies, Sons and Daughters of Liberty, a congress, and a whirlwind of indignation. The Tea Tax, the Massachusetts Circular Letter, the Boston Tea Party, the Boston Port Bill, and

[1] In this speech Otis struck the "keynote" of the first phase of the American revolution. Lecky's *England*, vol. iii. p. 336, says that it excited great enthusiasm in the colonies. Extracts from the speech are found in Tudor's *Life of James Otis*, and in Mace's *Working Manual of American History*.

other events, produced similar results,—closer unity in sentiment, and greater coöperation in action. On this oneness of mind and heart independence rested for its declaration and its success. The growth of union and the success of the war were mutually dependent. This same sentiment gave existence to the Confederation, and as it waxed or waned, the Confederation was strong or weak. But the great process of unification went on and finally gave us the form of a nation,—the Constitution of the United States, the crowning event of the American Revolution.

**Organization of the Period as a Whole.** The above brief examination of the thought and feeling of this period is made to show that an organizing idea in history is not an arbitrary whim or invention, but is a real, vital thing to be discovered by probing into the very essence of the facts to be organized, is a scientific induction drawn from a most careful analysis and comparison of the facts observed. It will be noticed that this examination confirms what we saw when dividing American history into its great coördinate parts, and also what was seen above when tracing the evolution of this period out of the life of the preceding,—that the differentiating mark of this phase of our life is the growth of the sentiment of union. If the results of these examinations did not mutually support one another there could be no organization. For this idea of union could not interpret the events of this period, if it did not at the same time set them off from the events of the other periods. This test must be satisfied by the organizing principle in any science; otherwise it cannot lay claim to the function of such an idea. The ultimate test, of course, comes in the process of interpretation, when the student is carefully searching for the content—for the true significance—of the individual facts.

If the induction is a true one this detailed and painstaking search will only reveal in this period the idea of union in greater fullness. It is finding this identity of content in the series of events called the Revolution that enables the mind to see it as an organically related whole. Here are events so widely different in aspect as almost to lose the student in the maze of differences, but under the direction of this idea of union we find them all akin. This identity will enable the teacher to point out in the most distant future the functioning of similar events. Identity of content is the only law of mind or of history that will enable the student to organize so many diverse facts into a logical historical whole.

The time between 1760 and 1789 was rich with events; and their systematic study as a whole must be carried further by measuring their relative value as a means to give them rank in the period. This is accomplished by comparing these events as to their relative contribution to the growth of the dominant idea of the time. Not only as a matter of knowledge but as a matter pertaining to the intelligent direction of others, the teacher must answer such questions as this: Which event will give the student the deepest insight into the great movement toward unity in thought and action,—the struggle over the Writs of Assistance, the Stamp Act Congress, the Boston Tea Party, the battle of Lexington, the creation of the Confederation, or the ratifying conventions that established the Constitution? This question asked and answered for the leading facts of the Revolution will give them their true rank in the period,—their proper coördination and sub-ordination in the series. They may thus be viewed in their true historical perspective. Then the period is no longer a chaos of facts, but each one stands in the place assigned it by its own historical significance.

**The Phases of the Period.** As a means to a scientific knowledge of the period as a whole, there can be no doubt concerning the value of the general process of organization just explained. But the general idea of union, as the content for events taken singly or in groups smaller than that of the period, is not adequate,—is too abstract for purposes of detailed study and organization. This would not only leave the content of revolutionary events vague, but, necessarily, also the student's notion of the movement of union would be indefinite. Hence, the idea of union must be pushed out into all its different manifestations. To obtain this richer content we must appeal to another great function of our organizing idea—the division of the period into its organic parts. In obedience to the principle of logical division, and in harmony with the laws of continuity and differentiation, we must find these parts by discovering differences in the growth of the sentiment of union. In casting the eye along the course of this mighty current between 1760 and 1789, there appear two general differences. In one part of the stream, thought and feeling are flowing in unison against England, while in the other, ideas and sentiments are moving toward agreement as to the proper relations between the states and the general government. Union against England dominated public sentiment from 1760 to 1783, and union on domestic questions had its beginning about 1775 and grew in intensity till 1789. These forms of union constitute the two great coördinate phases of the period of revolution. These two phases overlap, which is proof that the parts are historically true and were really organic forms of the people's thought, and not mere artificial inventions.

### Union against England

**Organizes Events from 1760 to 1783 into a Series.** Since the idea of union against England differentiates the

first from the second half of this period, it must also integrate all the leading facts of the first half. Union against England will be found as their chief common content. Whether we study the Massachusetts Circular Letter, the Congress of 1774, the Declaration of Independence, Washington's retreat through the Jerseys, or Burgoyne's campaign, the greatest common significance we can find in them is the relation of union to them as cause and their reaction upon it as effect. The problem is not entirely solved when all the facts are thus traced into this great stream of public sentiment. These events must stand in the mind in orderly arrangement. If a true historical sense is to be developed in the student, they must be given rank on basis of their contribution to maintaining union against England. We see that this is a more concrete and definite organizing idea than the general idea of union. Perhaps it is possible to discover a still more substantial organizing idea. This can come, as we have often seen, only by discovering the inherent differences in the growth of the organizing idea,—in this case, union against England. A glance at this growth will reveal two contrasting phases: Union against England on the basis of the Rights of Englishmen, extending from about 1760 to 1775, and most fully expressed in the Declaration of Rights; and union against England on the basis of the Rights of Man, which extended from 1775 to 1783, and best expressed in the Declaration of Independence.

**Union on the Basis of Rights of Englishmen.** The growth of union on the basis of the Rights of Englishmen is, in the order of time, the first phase of the American Revolution. To secure their rights as British subjects under the British Constitution was the animating thought that organized resistance to every measure of king or parliament aiming at an infringement of colonial privileges.

It was the inspiration of this idea that first made Americans one in thought and sentiment, and concentrated their efforts in every struggle from the Writs of Assistance to the battle of Lexington. The resolutions of town meetings and of colonial assemblies, petitions to the king and addresses to the English parliament and people by the Continental Congress, the organization and work of the Sons and Daughters of Liberty, the Committees of Correspondence, the Non-importation and Non-exportation societies, the passage of the Stamp Act, Tea Tax and Boston Port Bill, the Boston Massacre and the Tea Party, either consciously aimed at, or unconsciously produced, a union to obtain the rights common to all Englishmen. The development of this sentiment, then, must be taken as the organizing idea for all the facts of this first part of the union against England. To trace the connection between these individual facts and this great idea — to see each of them producing it or produced by it, or both — is to interpret them.

A formal interpretation of some one of the events of this time may serve to make plainer the process by which a concrete organizing idea performs its work. Let it be a familiar one,—the Stamp Act Congress. The process of interpreting this event must follow the general principle already laid down, and therefore requires four things of the student: 1. That he show, if possible, the congress to be an outgrowth of union and coöperation already in existence. 2. That the work of this congress — its discussions and declarations — be traced in its bearings on this idea of union. 3. That he show to what extent and in what way this meeting gave new impulses to thought and action directed to secure a united effort for the Rights of Englishmen. 4. That he show the bearing of this agitation on the America of to-day. The student has

seen this movement going on as the result of a number of conflicts before the time of the Stamp Act. Besides, it was more than a year after the first news of the Stamp Act reached America that the congress convened. During this time he has been watching public sentiment take form. He has seen organized opposition begin in the towns, and has noted its transfer to colonial legislatures through instructions to representatives. From capital to capital, and from town to capital and back again, he has watched the news of agitation spread over the continent. This system of intercommunication he saw carry the burning words of Patrick Henry to every colony both North and South, giving courage and enthusiasm to all the people till a call for a congress resounded over the whole land. By this process the student has been accumulating meaning for the congress, so that when he comes to it he is historically prepared for it. It stands to him as the expression of a great idea,—an idea that moves profoundly the mind and heart of an entire people. The meeting of this congress is not to him an empty happening which might or might not have occurred; but he sees its vital connection with the public sentiment that gave it birth, and hence views it as an occurrence which is natural, if not necessary.

The work of this meeting must also be looked at from the point of view of its effects on the growth of union. Even the greatness of the men comprising the congress has this significance. The eminence of that body gave only greater impetus to the movement among the people. One of the marked features of the work accomplished was that it came almost unanimously from their hands. This fact was of no small consequence, for agreement among the leaders made the rank and file harmonious. The Declaration of Rights—the most important document issued by

the congress[1] — was calculated greatly to strengthen oneness in thought and action, because it gave to the struggle a constitutional basis. This document, distributed among the people, read, debated, and talked over, was not only felt to be a justification of what had been done, but was a powerful educator of the public mind as to the ground of resistance. The loyal and warm-hearted petition of the congress to the king touched a responsive chord everywhere in America; it truly expressed the sentiments of Americans toward their sovereign, and, taken with the Declaration of Rights, it showed how loyalty and love of liberty grow side by side,—how loyalty does not mean servility, nor union treason. Thus we see that every important point connected with the congress touches the union to secure the Rights of Englishmen.

It is quite possible to put into the Stamp Act Congress a more specific and individualized content than union for the Rights of Englishmen, *i.e.*, union against internal taxation; but we have carried the process far enough for purposes of illustration. In the light of this process of organization, we see in this event a very perfect gradation of ideas. In the first place, beginning with the lowest degree of generality, the Stamp Act Congress expresses the immediate determination of the people to secure the repeal of the Stamp Act. The discovery of this idea in its content makes this congress a member of a series of events that were means in trying to reach the same end. With this idea in mind for its content, it is a member of the smallest of the various series to which it belongs. Rising a step higher in the scale of generality, we find in the Stamp Act Congress an idea common to all great events between 1761 and 1775,—union to secure the Rights of

[1] A more complete Declaration of the Rights of Englishmen is found among the documents issued by the Congress of 1774.

Englishmen; here it becomes akin to the struggle over the Writs of Assistance, the Massachusetts Circular Letter, the Boston Tea Party, and the Congress of 1774. In this same event we also find the more general idea of union against England; thus giving it place and meaning in a wider range of facts. It is now allied to the battle of Bunker Hill, the Declaration of Independence, Valley Forge, the treason of Arnold, and the surrender of Cornwallis. But this congress of 1765 contains the general idea of union—an idea that threads every great event of the American Revolution. In embodying union in its general form, the Stamp Act Congress strikes hands with the transformation of colonial into state governments, the Articles of Confederation, Shays' Rebellion, the cession of western lands, the formation of the Society of the Cincinnati, and the Constitutional Convention of 1787. Rising once more and finally in the scale of generality, we have in this event an idea that permeates all the facts of our history,—the evolution of the life of the American people. What is true of this event is true of the period of the Revolution, and what is true of this period is true of our entire history: it can be organized into a Hierarchy of Ideas.

**Union on Basis of the Rights of Man.** This is the second phase of the struggle against England, and has its origin when public sentiment begins to pass over from the Rights of Englishmen to the Rights of Man. The germs of this new basis of union are found in the preceding struggle. "The rights of man," "natural rights," and similar expressions, are found in the speeches and writings of Otis, Henry, and in the documents of legislatures and congresses. The genesis of the new movement was greatly stimulated by the failure of the efforts of Chatham and Burke at conciliation, and by the attitude of king and parliament toward the petitions of the congresses of 1774

and 1775. The congress of 1775 sent a final petition to the king by the hand of a good loyalist, Richard Penn. While waiting for the king's answer, the congress, in order not to prejudice the petition's reception, refused to undertake any measure looking toward independence. When, however, word came that the king had refused to receive the petition, had proclaimed the colonists rebels, and had hired mercenary troops, the congress went forward rapidly with measures that looked toward independence. Lexington and Bunker Hill had already occurred, and the siege of Boston was in progress. Paine's *Common Sense* came in January, 1776, to add argument to the force of events in favor of separation. These and other events convinced the majority of the people that England would never grant their coveted English rights. This conviction forced them to contemplate a broader and a more generous basis of action,—the Rights of Man. The ripening of this new sentiment produced the Declaration of Independence, —the best formulation of the Rights of Man ever penned.

In the winter and spring of 1776 various colonies began, with the advice of congress, to reorganize their local governments. New Hampshire and South Carolina were among the earliest to form a government based on the "consent of the governed." In April, 1776, North Carolina instructed her delegates in congress to coöperate with the other colonies in measures for independence. May 4th, Rhode Island disclaimed allegiance to the king, and instructed its delegates in congress to promote union and confederation. The great commonwealth of Virginia, in convention assembled, voted (May 15th) to instruct its representatives in congress to propose a declaration of independence, confederation, and foreign alliances. This action was transmitted to the other colonial assemblies. On June 12th the convention issued a "Declaration

of the Rights of Man." Of course, Massachusetts, in 1775, had overthrown the royal government. Thus the movement away from the Rights of Englishmen and forward to the Rights of Man went on till the summer of 1776, when the more conservative colonies could withstand the agitation no longer, and where the regular colonial authorities refused to instruct for independence, popular conventions assumed that function. The formal Declaration of Independence marks the triumph of the new basis of union in the minds and hearts of the American people. Its permanent triumph in institutional organization will be determined by the fortunes of war.

The enumeration of the above facts is not for the purpose of tracing all the causes that gave rise to the change in American thought and feeling, but rather to show how union for the Rights of Man[1] becomes the dominant idea for the second phase of union against England. This also serves to show that our organizing idea in this new phase of the Revolution is not merely assumed or invented, but is the essence of that phase of institutional life which most completely absorbed the energies of the people for that time,—a movement so fundamental that the immediate past flowed into it, and the immediate future sprang out of it. The nature of the work done by the leaders is rich in lessons for reformers. The gradual character of the changes was characteristic of the Revolution. Fifteen years of effort, gradually increasing in volume, finally brought the Declaration of Independence. The agitation was, in the main, temperate.

[1] The expression "Rights of Man" names more fundamentally the content of this movement than either "Independence" or "Separation." The latter are more frequently used, but the student must see that separation is likely to seem more of an act and less of the growth than the rights of man. Besides, independence is rightly viewed as a means to the realization of the rights of men in American institutions.

The leaders frowned upon violence, as displayed in the Stamp Act riots. The Boston Tea Party was not the work of a mob, but was carefully planned long before the event. The people and the leaders were one in this event. By moving slowly, thought and action were given time to mature. Hence, as Chatham said, "the union is solid, permanent, and effectual."

**The Organization of Military Events.** After the Declaration was made, most of the events connected with this phase of the Revolution were military in character. Battles and campaigns are a class of historical facts that have puzzled teachers and students. For a number of years less and less attention has been given to their study. Some persons urge their omission from text-books altogether. This is a natural reaction against the old-time view of history which made it consist largely of wars and the careers of warriors. Such was, no doubt, a very one-sided and superficial view of the subject; and it may be safely held that the military side of history will never again dominate our texts. Did the battles of the Revolution have anything to do with the real Revolution? This can be answered only in the affirmative, thus giving military events a place in the study; but what place or rank is not indicated. The battles of the Revolution were hardly a part of the real Revolution. They were the sign of a real revolution in the minds and hearts of the people; they were also the means by which the advance in thought and feeling was made permanent. The relation between the war and the new form of union was, therefore, an intimate one. Perfect union among the people won victories, and victories aroused more hearty and enthusiastic support for the cause. Hence, the rise and fall in the tide of public sentiment cannot be traced from 1775 to 1783 without some study of the military events of that

time. But how shall we study a battle? What, for instance, is the problem to be solved in studying the battle of Lexington? Our organizing principles—union for the Rights of Englishmen and union for the Rights of Man—must give answer. The student must see flowing into this battle all the preparations the colonists had made: the formation of committees of safety, the organization of minute men, the storing of munitions of war, the establishment of means of rapid communication between Boston and the villages and country to enable them to watch the British. The movement toward union, manifesting itself in these various ways, was the true cause of the battle, its character, and its immediate result. We now turn the battle toward its results and see how its content is enriched. First, let us see how not to do it. How this skirmish wrought up public opinion to so high a pitch is not to be discovered by trying to decide which party fired the first shot, nor by quoting the language used by Major Pitcairn as he bade the minute men lay down their arms, nor by trying to remember the number killed, wounded, and missing on each side. One might know all these facts, and many more of the accidental features of the affair, and yet not see the flame of indignation that swept over the land and made the people think and act as one man. A part of the answer to the problem of the battle of Lexington is to be found by seeing the response that came in the form of minute men from thirty Massachusetts towns before that day's work was over, and from all New England and the country at large in the days and weeks that immediately followed this contest. This answer is further to be read in the assembly of twenty thousand provincials around Boston, and in the patriotic resolves and energetic measures of the colonial assemblies, as they took up the burden of war.

The interpretation of this battle makes the problem in the study of a military event the same in kind as any other event. To view it as a student of military science, is to miss its true historical content. Because teachers of history and writers of text-books have persisted in trying to treat battles and campaigns as illustrations of military science, or have viewed them as mere external happenings isolated from the real life of the people, came the reaction against the study of battles. It is believed, however, that the method of interpretation suggested will go far toward giving military events their legitimate rank.

The battle, like any other external event, is a means, and not an end; it was a means, and not an end, to the people who participated in it. It must follow that only such features of the battle or campaign are to be studied as will contribute to the end in view. Military events of similar proportions do not bring about corresponding changes in the ideas and attitudes of the people. The disparity in the results of battles may be illustrated by the skirmish of Lexington and the storming of Stony Point. To the student of military science, the latter has many points of interest, while the former has little to commend it to him. To the student of the institutional life, the affair at Lexington is full of interest, while the attack on Stony Point has little value to him. It is true that this daring event has many unique and thrilling features about it, but their value ends largely in themselves. This illustrates the statement that there is no fixed relation, nor one permitting formulation, existing between a battle and the movement of public sentiment. The best that can be done, therefore, is for the teacher to keep before the student the problem to be solved, and, if necessary, to direct him in the preparation of his work,

so that emphasis will be given to those features that throw most light on the problem.

If he does this, the mind will group these facts into a series, on the basis of a common historical content; they thus become as much a part of the Revolution as do any other events of that time.

**Organization of Political Events.** During this second phase of the struggle against England we have seen that another series of events, more purely political in character, were taking place; they include the ordinary work of the Continental Congress, the Declaration of Independence, the formation of state constitutions, foreign relations, the attempt to establish a general government on the basis of the Articles of Confederation, and other events of a like nature. These are to be interpreted and integrated by the same organizing idea that answered for the military events,—union for the Rights of Man. The Declaration of Independence, as a document, gives the best formal expression of these rights. It embodies the ideas on which the struggle was to be waged, and on which it was to be justified to the Americans themselves and to the rest of mankind. The act of Declaration is evidence that new ideas had taken the place of the old basis of union. The enthusiasm with which it was received by the army and by the people attests the fact that union on the new basis was an accomplished fact; it also measures to the student the strength of the revulsion in feeling that had taken place between April, 1775, and July, 1776. From this time on the attainment of the Rights of Man becomes the conscious aim of the Americans. They had not only given up the hope of English rights, but had substituted a new ambition, and one full of inspiration. This is the ideal that animated their every act, from the smallest to the greatest;

it was a consuming passion with them. It seems to follow, then, that the student ought to put into the means used the same meaning which the people themselves did; but this interpretation cannot be made unless the doctrines of the great Declaration are studied, here and now, in the very place this event occupies in the series of which it is a part. The student ought to be required to make a careful analysis of the political principles[1] found therein, so that the "rights of man" may mean something definite to him. The accidental features should not be ignored; but the teacher of history must constantly bear in mind the fact that the student may know all there is to be known of such features and still not know the real Declaration of Independence. There are two reasons for this study: it casts a new and fuller light on the events preceding the Declaration,—these events really caused it,—and their true and full meaning is not known till the things that were caused are understood; again, the events, both political and military, that followed the Declaration, are to be seen as means in the process by which it became possible for the ideas of the Declaration to become the foundation of our institutions. Thus, illuminated by the same great idea, the events between 1775 and 1783 become the members of a connected historical series. The student also finds, if he looks, that great men, in great crises, appeal to the Declaration of Independence for inspiration.

## Union of the States by Means of the General Government

**The Organizing Idea of the Second Half of the Revolution.** The period of the Revolution is a period by virtue of the growth of the idea of union which permeated

[1] The portion of the Declaration preceding the enumeration of grievances is the part to be studied most at this point.

every act and fact of that age. We have already marked two great differentiating forms in the process of union; union against England, which constitutes the first half of the period, and union between the states by means of the general government, which constitutes the last half of the period. These two coördinate parts are not cross-sections in the stream of Revolutionary thought and feeling, but are parts found running parallel through a portion of the period.

In the very beginnings of the Revolution the colonies were brought into new relations with each other. To bring to a successful issue the combination against England required that these relations be made definite in order to promote harmonious and efficient action. No sooner had the Continental Congress convened than it had to determine the number of votes a colony should cast and the number of votes necessary to bind all the colonies. When the war opened, still other questions pertaining to intercolonial relations pressed upon congress, such as the number of troops, the amount of supplies, and the amount of money to be raised. How far shall the authority of the congress extend, and when shall the authority and machinery of the state government come into play? The Declaration of Independence also aided in forcing the question of domestic union upon the attention of the people. In fact, the committees to draw up the Articles of Confederation and the Declaration were at work at the same time, and the former made its first report only a few days after the latter's work was done. As the war neared its close and the burdens of the struggle grew heavier, the question of the proper relations between the states and the general government began to assume still more prominence. The efforts to pay the army, to make satisfactory commercial treaties with foreign

nations, the disturbances over interstate trade, and the injury to American manufactures at the close of the war by the inflow of cheap British products, all kept the minds of the people constantly agitated as to the proper distribution of sovereignty between the states and the general government. The same problem confronted the Maryland and Virginia commissioners in 1785, and that still greater body of men who met at Annapolis in 1786 and called for a national convention. And what was the greatest problem before the convention of 1787, and also before the ratifying state conventions? Was it not the proper adjustment of the relations between the states and the nation?

The movement of public thought and feeling towards agreement on some principle of coöperation between the states and the general government is the organizing idea of the second half of the Revolution. It is the discovery of this idea as the common content of the events of this time that resolves them into an intelligible series. The teacher must, therefore, see to it that the student discovers this movement as cause and as effect in the individual facts of that time, and that he distributes his time and energy among these events in proportion as they contributed to this great movement. Some gave little, some gave much, and they are to be judged accordingly.

**Union on Basis of Sovereignty of the State.** The Declaration of Independence expressly asserted the sovereignty of the people of the thirteen colonies as a whole with reference to England, and, by implication, with reference to the rest of the world. Public sentiment was not divided by state lines on the question of independence; but when the Articles of Confederation brought to the front questions involving the relations of

the states to the general government on subjects that did not primarily touch the conflict with England, it was found in congress and among the people that no such unanimity of sentiment prevailed as to the principle on which the relation should be permanently established. This difference caused the congress to delay over a year before adopting the Articles. It was found impossible to carry the principle of national sovereignty, which controlled, in the main, foreign affairs, into the domain of domestic questions; and the more public sentiment was sounded, the more it became evident that the states must be more or less sovereign in home affairs. From 1775 to 1785 the sovereignty of the state on internal questions was generally agreed upon. This is the first phase of domestic union,—the first part of the second half of the Revolution. The Articles of Confederation embody the progress made.

The growth of domestic union did not keep pace with union against England. In the first place, the colonies had been undergoing, for a generation or more before the Revolution, a change of feeling toward the mother country. This we saw in the study of each group of colonies. Besides, the first phase of union against England had to prove itself a failure as a means of obtaining a redress of grievances before the people could see the necessity of a permanent union based upon purely American interests. Of course, no such union could arise so long as they were struggling for the Rights of Englishmen. The habit of coöperating against England was fifteen years old before the germs of permanent domestic union began to grow. Again, from 1775 to 1783 the interest in the questions of domestic confederation was entirely secondary, as we have seen, and in many cases arose out of conditions which were likely

to disappear with the return of peace. Two causes operated to prevent internal union from keeping pace. One was the people's inbred jealousy of any authority that seemed to have even the appearance of centralization. This was not an unnatural fear, for they had no other experience and no other example than that offered by England. The other lies in the fact of the peculiar environment of the colonial era out of which the colonies were trying to emerge. The people were attached to their local institutions, and scarcely a man in 1783 loved America more than his state. It was a most difficult problem to lead the people to repose a portion of their confidence and affection in a new system of government. For these reasons the Articles of Confederation could not and did not embody as high a degree of domestic union as did the Declaration. Theoretically and practically, the states held more sovereignty than the nation so far as internal questions were concerned.

The sovereignty of the state, therefore, is the dominant idea of this sub-period, and gives historical continuity to its events and performs for the teacher the pedagogical functions of organization. This idea furnishes the main content for all the events of importance touching the relations between the states and the general government. It is the great idea that controlled this class of events during that time; they came in obedience to it, and in turn reacted on public sentiment so as to modify this law of their being. The sovereignty of the state is the fundamental doctrine of the Articles of Confederation, and interprets them and the acts done under them. Whatever can be pointed out as defects in the Articles, and as failures in the administration under them, are to be interpreted by this principle and its corresponding sentiment. Not only do they stand as defects of the

general government, but they took hold of men's minds long afterward, and held them in a powerful grip under the name of "States Rights." These facts stand in the student's mind as having a common content; also he will readily see that some of them contain more of this content than do others. Thus, this study enables him to give each of these facts its true rank in the series. The knowledge of this by the teacher before the student begins the series will be of great service in guiding the work so as to secure economy of time and energy.

**Union on Basis of Sovereignty of the Nation.** No doubt the careful student has observed, in the series of events just studied, this difference: that, although state sovereignty is the main content of these events so far as their cause is concerned, yet their effects often tended to draw the people away from this principle as the basis of union. This is particularly true of the events between the closing years of the war and 1787. We may say, then, that the student, observing one of these events, looks through it in two directions,— back toward state sovereignty as its remote or immediate cause, and forward toward national sovereignty as the effect it had on public sentiment. It is true that the effects of these events are the negation of state sovereignty, and are, therefore, legitimately interpreted by it until the growth of public sentiment takes on a positive form and moves consciously toward the sovereignty of the nation. The genesis of a new idea is often found in the negation of some idea that is worn out or fails to meet the requirements of the changed circumstances arising out of new conditions. The old idea, on account of its inadequacy, causes a reaction in public sentiment against itself till this sentiment moves off in the direction of the new and opposing idea. This is just what took place in the transition from state

sovereignty to national sovereignty. The movement toward nationality was well under way by 1785 and 1786, and the current was not turned aside after this point had been reached. The struggle for its formal attainment goes on with increasing force through the convention of 1787 and the ratifying conventions of the states.

**The Process and Material of Organization.** The suggestion has already been made that in the first phase of domestic union many of the facts pointed to a new form of union, and must be so interpreted. We do not violate, but obey, a law of historical growth when we connect with the new growth some of the events that were found to be members of a different series on the basis of a different idea. When the student is interpreting events in the light of the idea of state sovereignty, the teacher should lead him to discover the tendency of the new movement as it now and then appears in the midst of other effects. This is necessary in order to compass the full significance, not only of the facts, but of the principle itself. What an idea like state sovereignty is potentially can only be discovered by watching it transform itself through external facts into reality, even if a part of this reality is the negation of the principle itself. The discovery of the trend of public sentiment is real history study, and need not be affected by opinions which the student may have as to what ought to have been. The true study of history consists in discovering what did result, regardless of what should have resulted. By the nature of things, people differ in their opinions of what should be done or what results should occur from certain causes, but there should be little difficulty in discovering what did occur.

As far back as 1776 the idea of a national government was suggested by Thomas Paine, and also by Rutledge of South Carolina. But the first years of the war so

unified public sentiment and effort that the defects of the form of government did not appear in their completeness till near its close. In 1780 the idea met with frequent individual and public expression; the Boston convention of New England delegates, and, later in the year, the Hartford meeting of New England and New York delegates, called for a new government and sent a circular letter to the states and to Washington. In the same year Hamilton wrote his famous Duane letter; in 1781, a series of papers called the *Continentalist*, a name suggestive of nationality; also a plan for a national bank. Paine renewed his old suggestion. In the next year Washington took a hand in the agitation, and wrote to many prominent men urging the need of a new constitution. Twice during this year congress called for larger powers from the states, and a pamphlet argued for a congress to frame a new government; in 1783, the New York legislature was moved to ask congress to call a convention to revise the Articles of Confederation. At this time it became fashionable in the army and in the taverns and coffee-houses to drink the toasts: "A hoop to the barrel," and "Cement to the Union." The formation of the Society of the Cincinnati, the agitation over the cession of western lands, and the proposal of an impost by congress also aided in molding public sentiment. This agitation extended over the next year, and to it may be added the influence exerted by Noah Webster's essays in favor of stronger government.

By the time 1785 is reached we may say that the current was setting strongly toward nationality. The business men of New York city called for adequate powers for congress; the merchants and mechanics of Boston addressed congress and the state legislatures to urge that the former be given power over commerce; the merchants also opened correspondence with other commercial centers to

enlist them in the cause. Governor Bowdoin addressed the General Court on the question and suggested a convention of the states to consider the subject. The General Court resolved in favor of such a convention and instructed the governor to communicate with other executives, and directed their delegates in congress to move in the matter. In this same year the people of Pennsylvania, through a popular convention, demanded more power for the general government, and later in the year the governor and council called for a new constitution. Early in this year of healthy agitation the commissioners from Maryland and Virginia met at Alexandria, and, with the advice of Washington, agreed to uniform rules for their trade,—a work which suggested the desirability and the necessity of a wider application of common commercial regulations.

In 1786 came the Annapolis convention with wider representation and with aims still more national than the Alexandria meeting. Hamilton wrote the convention's report, calling for a national convention to revise the Articles of Confederation; this was widely circulated and commanded the attention of thoughtful men in all parts of the country. In the winter of 1786 and 1787 New England was shaken to its center, and the rest of the states startled, by the insurrection of Shays; this made men and states willing to go to a national convention who otherwise would not have gone. The mutterings of discontent were coming over the mountains from Kentucky and Tennessee; already the Spaniards had seized goods of westerners on the lower Mississippi, and General Clark at Vincennes had retaliated and was thought to be preparing to attack the Spaniards. These events were rapidly consolidating public opinion in favor of the great convention soon to meet at Philadelphia,

and no doubt forced Washington to reconsider his refusal to be a delegate. The state ratifying conventions constitute the last series in the great movement toward national sovereignty as the basis of union. They are also the last acts in the drama of the American Revolution. With their consummation, the form of a nation comes into being.

**The Limit to the Process of Organizing a Period.** With the close of the period under discussion, the more formal treatment of historical organization ceases; therefore, the question of the limit of this process as applied to periods may be properly raised at this point. While no limit to this process has been assigned in preceding discussions, it is really inferred from the nature of the process itself that it must of necessity come to an end when a content has been found so specific and particularizing as to belong to one event only. With this content alone in consciousness, the event or other fact stands in mental isolation, or as nearly so as can be. This must be, for we have seen over and over that resemblance in content is the only basis of organization. Without it there is no integration, and likewise no coördination and no subordination; for there exists no common standard for testing the relative value of events; therefore no ranking can occur. This sort of content has little value except to give concrete and individualized details. It must not be inferred, however, that concrete details have no organizing power. Whether or not they have depends upon the power of teacher and student to trace general principles or phases of institutional growth into concrete details. Nothing can be more concrete and individualized than the ideas of some one particular man, as Roger Sherman in the convention of 1787. And yet this concrete and individualized embodiment may, at the same time, be the sentiment of

a majority of the country; it is none the less concrete because found elsewhere, and not the less universal because found in the heart and mind of a given man. The isolated concrete fact, while not more concrete than the example just given, has less historical value, because it cannot aid in the interpretation of other concrete facts like itself. When, therefore, the interpretation of an event proceeds until isolated content is all that is obtained, the process ought to cease.

But between this extreme limit and what has been done with this period in passing from the most general idea of union down to the four coördinate and more concrete forms of union, there may be found several other shades of thought and feeling in each of these forms. For instance, this can be done easily for the first form of union extending from 1761 to 1775. No doubt, union to secure the Rights of Englishmen was differentiated by public opinion into the various elements that entered into the people's conception of English rights, such as trial by jury, right of internal taxation, and finally the right to resist even external taxation under the guise of the tax on tea. Each of these ideas may be found as the content of a smaller series of events than the series unified by the Rights of Englishmen. In a similar way it is quite possible to discover phases of thought and feeling in the growth of union on the basis of Rights of Man, the sovereignty of the state, and the sovereignty of the nation. These more specific and possible forms of thought and feeling will not be discussed at length, for the reason that it is the aim to illustrate the nature and principles of the process of organization rather than to deal with historical material as such. It is believed that the organization of the period of the Revolution has been carried far enough to enable the teacher and student to push

the process into the more specific phases already indicated.

**The Result.** If the teacher has guided the student through the period by the light of the principles of organization, the result, on the side of knowledge, should stand about as follows: 1. The facts and events of the Revolution stand in his mind united into a series by the presence of a common idea,—the growth of union; some facts stand out with great fullness, while others fade out of importance till they have hardly a rank or place in the series. 2. His view of the ideas and events of this period as a whole gives two parts, two great series, each with its members joined and ranked by phases of the growth of union. In the first of these two series, the animating idea is union against England, and in the second, it is union on domestic questions. 3. A closer inspection will show that the student has broken each of these phases of union into two parts and reorganized each part into a new series on a new basis; union against England and its events are separated into two parts: union for the Rights of Englishmen, and union for the Rights of Man; union on domestic questions and the events attending it are separated into union on the basis of state sovereignty, and union on the basis of national sovereignty. Thus, the period stands in the student's mind an orderly arrangement of ideas of varying degrees of generality. Each fact stands illuminated by a series of ideas rising from the lowest to the highest. Each fact has a lowest idea that isolates it from all others, and a higher idea that gives it fellowship with a series of like content, and so on upward through changing degrees of generality until the highest idea is reached, an idea that binds it to all the facts of the period.

Perhaps a concrete illustration of the idea of gradations of generality in the content of historical material may

serve to make it clearer. The Declaration of Rights, the Declaration of Independence, the Articles of Confederation, and the Constitution are four great cardinal facts in this period. Each of these contains a phase of thought that not only separates it from the others, but a phase so specialized as to take it out of any series to which other more general ideas may have assigned it. But as soon as we put into the Declaration of Rights the idea of union for the Rights of Englishmen, it immediately coalesces with a wide range of events—those from 1761 to 1775—having the same content. The same is true of the Declaration of Independence, the Articles of Confederation, and the Constitution. If we think of the Declaration of Independence as expressing the idea of union against England, it and the other members of its series—most of the events between 1775 and 1783—immediately join hands with the Declaration of Rights and its series of facts, the two series thus forming one. We may find in the Articles of Confederation the idea of domestic union, and if we do so it and the facts of our history immediately associated with it combine with the Constitution and its associated events so as to form a greater series. If we look upon the Constitution as marking the progress of the idea of union in general, it not only joins hands with the Articles of Confederation and the two great Declarations, but also with all the main facts of the American Revolution.

**What the Revolution Contributed.** In no other period are the results cleaner cut, and, therefore, more obvious:

1. England's shortsighted policy drove the colonies into a rebellion which resulted in the acknowledgment of their success. A world-wide change was produced in England's method of treating her colonies.

2. A new nation—the American Republic—with untried problems was admitted to the sisterhood of states. Not one of these states but saw shipwreck for the new nation. Her own sons were at times doubtful.

3. The one great result was the spirit of union which the Revolution wrought out and to which the Constitution gave expression. It will be a part of the problem of succeeding periods to trace this spirit of national union down to our own day.

4. A result of far-reaching importance was the growth of religious freedom. This feeling had taken its rise in the colonial period but in the Revolution it gained in strength till it became embodied in the Constitution. This spirit has kept on growing to the present day, when men of any religious belief or of no belief expect this as a personal right.

5. Out of this period came a nation with new industrial problems. The restrictions by which England limited production in certain commodities were removed, and a new era opened. Even in this period we find a tendency among our people to push westward, a tendency which grew to tremendous proportions after the Civil War.

6. The Revolution raised a spirit in favor of the rights of man which reached the slave. The northern states, where slavery was not deep-rooted, easily, but gradually, freed their slaves. But in the South, slavery awaited the pen of the Emancipator, and even now its effects still occupy attention.

7. The Declaration of Independence and the Constitution were the two great formulated results of this period. The former affected, and continues to influence, political life in America. Its doctrines in that age were almost universally accepted by the Whigs in England and in America. It is the most concise and accurate statement

ever written of the rights of man, including the right of revolution. The Constitution is the embodiment of the practical experience of the Americans, as Englishmen and as Americans. Principles can be found in it older than the Bill of Rights, older than Magna Charta, or older than William the Conqueror. This constitution was put together on the principle of divided responsibility. In this respect it has been faithfully followed by every state constitution since 1787.

8. In the discussions over the questions raised in the Constitutional Convention and in the ratifying conventions the doctrines of the "Rights of the States" came to the front. This doctrine became the basis of the foundation of a great political party and received its greatest development leading up to the Civil War.

# PERIOD OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF NATIONALITY

## The Period as a Whole

**General Nature of the Period.** The student will find greater difficulty in discovering the dominant idea of this period than in the case of the Revolution. The movements in the preceding period were rapid; thought and passion centered around a few definite propositions and moved with such rapidity that extraneous matters were pushed aside. The struggle, in its externals, was dramatic and absorbing, as is usually the case with revolutions. Because of this very intensity, the period was a short one, if measured in the number of its years.

The movement of ideas in the new period is much slower. Besides their more evolutionary growth, ideas and institutions are constantly becoming more complex, and therefore distracting elements more frequently obtrude themselves. Again, the period chronologically covers nearly three times as much ground as the Revolution.

The Revolution had developed the form of a nation, and expressed the result in the Constitution. In the beginning, the forms set up by this instrument did not have a perfected national spirit to animate them. The struggle with England had produced a good degree of national sentiment on foreign questions, and the campaign for the sovereignty of the nation as a basis of union had done much toward making us a nation on purely domestic interests. The growth of national sentiment, with reference to foreign questions, had been more rapid and substantial than on domestic matters. The Declaration of Independence, relating primarily to foreign affairs, was more nationalistic in its tone and propositions than

the Articles of Confederation which were concerned primarily with domestic questions; and the Articles themselves conferred more powers on congress in regard to foreign, than to home, relations. While the united strength of these two phases of sentiment did not really make the thirteen states a nation, yet the germs of one had begun to take root.

The long struggle in the constitutional convention and the longer and severer battle for ratification in the states, accompanied by anger, jealousy, suspicion, charges of bad motives, and threats of alliances, go to show that the preliminary victory for nationality was won with difficulty. It may aid us to judge the true strength of the new movement if we recall that the Constitution would probably have been defeated had the congress of the Confederation thrown its influence in the scale against it, had Washington refused his support, or had it been sent to the people for ratification by direct vote. But even as it was, the feeling for stronger government was not general enough to get the Constitution through the great states of Massachusetts, Virginia, and New York, without a definite understanding that it was to be freely amended.

The spirit of nationality requires that the people's thought break over the narrow limits of state lines and contemplate the broader and deeper questions that arise out of the life of the whole. This broadening of thought does not belong to political problems alone, but to all forms of institutional life. The spirit of nationality does not require the people to be a unit on all the details of organization and the means of accomplishing specific ends, but it does require them to transfer a portion of their admiration and affection from the state and locality to the nation; that they see the highest interests of the state and neighborhood in the highest good of the whole.

Nationality is not only a sentiment, but a principle of action for the statesman. It declares that national functions shall be exercised for the good of the whole, and looks upon the nation as the most appropriate and efficient agent in the performance of such functions. The sentiment and principle are interactive; each is the cause and the effect of the other.

It fell to our history between 1789 and 1870 to produce this result. It was in this time that the germs of national life, which originated mainly in the last phase of the Revolution, were so developed as to constitute a new era in our institutional evolution. So wide is its sweep and deep its current that the stream of nationality is the greatest, the most fundamental, movement that took place between these two dates. It is the presence of this principle and sentiment that constitutes this a period in American history. There were other mighty agencies at work during this time; some were in harmony with nationality, and others were in deadly conflict with it; yet they were all either absorbed or destroyed by this dominant one.

**The Phases of the Period.** If the above propositions are true, it follows that the growth of the spirit of nationality is the organizing idea for the period, and that its phases will furnish the organizing principle for the subperiods. These are as follows:

Relations between Nationality and Democracy, 1789–1840.
1. A Period of Conflict, 1789–1803.
2. The Mutual Approach of Nationality and Democracy, 1800–1820.
3. Fusion of Nationality and Democracy Working out its Results, 1816–1840.

Relations between Nationality and Slavery, 1820–1870.
1. Slavery Gradually Grows Hostile to Nationality, 1820–1840.
2. Sectionalization of Interests and Sentiments, 1835–1860.
3. Battle with Slavery and Triumph of Nationality, 1860–1870.

# RELATIONS BETWEEN NATIONALITY AND DEMOCRACY

## A Period of Conflict

**The Germs of the Conflict.** At the opening of this period only the professional classes, the well-to-do, and the well-educated, were imbued with the spirit of nationality; and even these were not all thoroughly devoted to this idea, and furnished many examples of opposition. The mass of the common people were certainly more given to local interests and more controlled by state pride than by national sentiment. Of course, many of this class had been influenced by the preceding campaign, and were in a position to be converted to nationality. At the same time, it was a deep conviction of the great leaders of the "well-born" classes that the country's only hope lay in extending its sphere of national activity.

**Unconscious Progress of National Sentiment.** In the opening events of this period we witness a conflict between democracy[1] and nationality. The election of representatives, senators, and the electoral college formally opened the new era. As the student looks into these events, he will discover that in form and purpose they are new, and without difficulty will find their cause in the provisions of the new Constitution.[2] Probably the great variety in election methods will attract his attention. He should see that while electors were mostly chosen by state

[1] The term "democracy," when used to designate a political party, will be capitalized, but not when designating the mass of plain people, their ideas and sentiments.

[2] Just here the student must go to the Constitution and read its provisions concerning these processes. This is not only desirable as a means to a proper understanding of the events, but it is the best way to study Governmental Civics.

legislatures, in Virginia and Maryland they were elected by a direct popular vote, and in Massachusetts by a mixed method — two electors being chosen by the people, and the rest by the legislature from twenty-four names presented by congressional districts. In New York no electors were chosen, because the upper house demanded a concurrent vote, while the lower house held out for a joint one. The houses also quarrelled in New Hampshire over the method of election. The lack of uniformity was also exhibited in congressional elections. In New Jersey one portion of the state kept open the polls for three weeks and only closed them on proclamation from the governor. Connecticut voted twice, first for three men, and afterwards to elect one of the three as a representative. In Massachusetts some of the districts voted twice before members could be elected. What is the historical significance of these conflicting and contrasting methods? This can be seen by comparing them with the uniformity which prevails to-day. The difference between then and now reveals the distance in idea between the two periods, and how much nationalization has had to do in order to work out methods of election common to all portions of the nation, and coöperative to national ends. The people of the whole country were made to engage in the same acts at the same time and for like purposes. The repetition of this series of events and of the incidents connected therewith greatly promoted the consideration of matters of common concern, and to this extent broadened the ideas and sympathies of the people — drawing them away from the narrower and opposing interests of the community and the state. This, on the whole, has been the tendency and the result of all national elections.

Akin to this was the effect of Washington's journey from Mt. Vernon to New York to be inaugurated. It was a

continuous triumph; in one place there were feasts and toasts, in another escorts and processions, and in a third a combination of these. Decorations of cedar and laurel, flags and liberty caps, triumphal arches and evergreen crowns, bonfires and signal lights, firing salutes and ringing of bells, patriotic songs and appropriate mottoes signified the people's affection for the national hero. The inaugural ceremonies showed similar enthusiasm on the part of those present. The people who read and heard of these interesting events were also thrilled with hope and pride over the auspicious beginnings of the national government.

**The Struggle Originates over Domestic Questions.** The stimulus given to national sentiment by the above events was largely, if not entirely, unconscious. The fact that the growth was unconscious proves nothing against the strength of the sentiment, for unconscious growth is often the most natural, and hence the most substantial and permanent. We now come to consider a conscious movement. In this, some of the people formed definite purposes and called into being appropriate agencies for their realization, while others were just as definitely determined to oppose and circumvent these ends. The contest over the leading measures and events of Washington's and Adams' administrations may be denominated a contest between nationality and democracy. This is a correct statement of the nature of the first phase of development in the period of nationality. Two general considerations prove it: the nature of the ideas in conflict, and the contrasts between the people who gathered around these ideas. In the first case we find measures and means taken for the primary purpose of calling into vigorous life national agents and functions. This policy was defended under the principle of liberal construction of the Constitution. All this was strongly combated by the idea of

local self-government — the basal idea of primitive democracy. As a feeling, the fear was that the position of the states and the interests of sections might become subordinated to those of the nation. The defence of this position was sought in the principle of strict construction of the Constitution, which was often interpreted to mean state sovereignty. In the second place, the people composing the opposition belonged to what is often called the democracy,—the people in the humbler walks of life who, by experience, are strongly attached to localities. The people supporting the measures of national import included the majority of the well-to-do and the educated classes. From interest, education, and experience, these people believed themselves better fitted to take broad views of governmental questions than were their opponents.

In this contest the presence of two classes of events will be observed,—those relating to domestic affairs and those concerning foreign relations. The work and measures of Hamilton may be properly regarded as precipitating the conflict of ideas alluded to above. These were a tariff and excise, the funding and assumption bills, a United States bank, and a mint. An examination of the controversy over the tariff will reveal that its immediate purpose was to obtain revenue sufficient to meet the pressing needs of the government, and that another purpose was hardly secondary to this: to "give a just and decided preference to our labors." Over the first object but little dispute occurred, its aim being so clearly just and necessary; but the question of protection aroused animated discussion. The conduct of congress demonstrated the fact that a power had arisen capable, by its decisions, of doing great good to some interests, and perhaps harm to others. The result was that as many interests as possible tied themselves thus early to the nation and became,

perforce, the supporters of the administration and of the nationalistic view of the functions of government. Both friend and foe to the tariff in these debates, in or out of congress, aided in forcing upon the attention of the people questions of general as well as of local concern, and thus contributed to awaken a national consciousness.

But the feeling over the tariff was tame as compared with the passion engendered by the funding and assumption bills. These measures were explained before congress early in 1790, and included plans for paying the foreign and domestic debts and also the state debts incurred during the War of the Revolution. The plans for the payment of the foreign debt met with little or no opposition. The foreign debt seemed one of honor and gratitude owed to friendly nations, but somehow the home debt was not quite in the same category. Many, in and out of congress, argued against paying the face value of the obligation to the present holders. Discussions on this point began to reveal two classes of persons,—moneyed men and speculators, and the original holders of the debt, many of whom were farmers, laborers, and former soldiers. They had been compelled to part with their certificates, and even then speculators were scouring the country in search of continental promises still held by the people of the back districts. But in the interest of the nation's credit, congress voted the measure without any distinction between the original and the present holder of the certificate. Just as the vote on the foreign debt raised America in the eyes of foreign countries, so the success of this measure demonstrated the absolute fidelity of the nation to its home creditors, and immediately gave our own citizens concrete proof of the strength of the new government.

The assumption of the state debts aroused the strongest opposition yet encountered. The public took an interest

in the contest, the newspapers were often filled with communications of the subject, and even threats of disunion were made. Here was pressed the argument of strict construction as a means of opposition and of protection to the interests of localities. The debates went on with varying effects during the spring and summer of 1790, and the bill was finally passed by means of an agreement between Hamilton and Jefferson that eastern votes should give the national capital to the South, and southern votes should carry the assumption of the state debts. Out of this conflict came two enduring results: 1. The location and establishment of the capital, whose life and environment testify to the aspiration of the people after a truly national existence, and where there is gathered the external evidence of a national organization. 2. The consciousness that the assumption bill was a purposed and extraordinary stretch of national authority. This result gave satisfaction to some and alarm to others. Virginia's legislature voted that assumption was "dangerous to the rights of the people."

After assumption, the nation needed more revenue than the tariff supplied. Hamilton proposed an excise on distilled liquors. It met opposition, but not on the ground of being unconstitutional, for the strict constructionist could find the very word "excise" in the Constitution. Nevertheless, the people who were coming to accept this view of the Constitution were the opponents of the new measure. The ground of opposition was fundamentally the same as that against assumption,—the desire to prevent the extension of national authority. They saw in this new law a very great increase in the number of government officials who would go prying around the country and into the private business of many people. The bill passed in 1791, and in 1794 the opposition of people of

western Pennsylvania, encouraged by sympathizers in other states, resisted the collection of the excise till the militia, summoned by national authority, suppressed the Whiskey Rebellion. While the national authority was thus vindicated by force of arms, the opposition began to consolidate itself more and more.

The last of Hamilton's great financial plans was a United States bank. More than the other measures did this call into exercise the implied powers of the Constitution. In that time, before the unwritten Constitution was thought of, it certainly was an unusual exercise of power to call a bank into existence to carry out the nation's right to raise revenue and pay the debts of the United States. The provisions of the law made the government a stockholder, and permitted it to borrow $100,000 from the bank. The bank was to have no national rival, and could greatly aid the government in making loans, and aid business by establishing branches in leading business centers. The opposition was intense.

The people began to gather around leaders. "While conservatives, aristocrats, the commercial class, and the friends of powerful rule thus gravitated toward Hamilton, . . . the liberty-loving, those jealous of class supremacy and court manners, they who detested money-changers and the new methods of growing rich, together with the floating remnants of the Anti-Federal and State Rights party, were irresistibly attracted toward Jefferson." Thus, Hamilton's policy created a great contest between nationality and democracy. This is the all-inclusive result, and will translate and explain more events than any other movement of that time.

**The Progress of the Conflict over Foreign Relations.** The discussion which follows does not purport to be a complete history of these events, and deals with only so

much of incident and detail as is necessary to show the progress of this interesting struggle and the evolution of its resultant,—a rising nation. Before the conflict between nationality and democracy had fully developed, a new element injected itself into the controversy,—war between France and England. This war grew out of the progress of the French Revolution. The American people were sympathetic spectators, because France seemed to be following the example which she had so generously aided in establishing in America. At the first appearance of extreme measures those Americans who followed Hamilton and strong government began to lose sympathy with the Revolution, and were ready when war came to sympathize with England. The more democratic among our people were only made stronger friends of France by her war against England and the rising opposition at home. Washington issued his famous Proclamation of Neutrality. This document in effect announced to the world our determination to stand aloof from European complications, and was consequently the herald of a rising confidence in the ability of the new nation to maintain its place without the support of any European ally. It thus planted the germ of a permanent foreign policy which ultimately made us really an independent people. The Declaration of Independence was the expression of an intense desire for political separation from England. The war made this an objective fact. But both could not destroy America's dependence upon Europe; the colonial habit could not be thus easily eradicated. Looking backward, the proclamation was a new declaration of independence, while looking forward, it was a new prophecy of nationality. The immediate result, however, was to disappoint France and her friends and to please her enemies. Public sentiment was with France and against England, and the people joined

with enthusiasm in the demonstrations connected with the reception of Genêt, the French minister. The latter cultivated successfully the feeling against England and tried to turn the public against the proclamation and its enforcement, and finally against Washington's administration. He failed, lost public esteem, and was superseded. A great deal of significance must attach to the fact that while the majority of the people took sides with France against England in a way to suggest little national self-respect, yet when called upon by the conduct of Genêt to choose between Genêt and France on the one hand, and Washington and America on the other, the decision was prompt and patriotic for that day.

The more radical members of the democratic societies were never enthusiastic over neutrality. These organizations sprang into existence, in imitation of the French Jacobin clubs. They declared themselves the true disciples of the Rights of Man, and that the hope of Europe hung on the success of the French Revolution. No doubt this retarded the success of neutrality, yet it must be remembered that these societies also aimed to make America more democratic. Their fundamental cause lies in the growing conflict between nationality and democracy. They would have had no existence had there not been a body of men of opposite ideas and purposes, and who were looked upon as favoring less democracy, if not more aristocracy, in the government of America. These societies became the severest critics of the administration and encouraged the Whiskey Rebellion. They possessed the virtues and defects of mad enthusiasts over ideas necessary for the complete development of American nationality, and were also the angry opponents of an idea whose union with democracy was necessary to the latter's permanent and healthy existence on this continent.

The contribution to nationality made by our relations with France was greatly influenced by our relations with England. Troubles with England had come down through the Confederation. She refused to carry out some of the provisions of the treaty of 1783, and to give up her illiberal commercial policy. In addition, the war in Europe made it desirable for her to confiscate American commerce of any kind with France and French colonies, and also to search American vessels for English-born sailors. This injury to property and persons sailing under the American flag aroused great indignation against England in 1793 and 1794. Measures of retaliation were proposed in congress, and a temporary embargo was passed. President Washington sent Chief Justice Jay to England to arrange matters. This mission made the democracy in the country furious, as they could discover in it all sorts of danger to America, insults to France, and truckling to England. The senate confirmed the treaty after a hard fight, but popular feeling was so strong against Hamilton that he was in danger from mobs; Jay was burned in effigy, and Washington himself was vilified. The treaty perhaps saved us from war at that time. But while it promoted partisanship, it taught the friends of England that she was not likely to be at all generous while dealing with American interests. England missed a great opportunity to restore to some extent the sympathy lost in the Revolution; but she began to teach Americans the lesson they needed most to learn: that nothing but self-interest would control European nations in dealing with America. Of course, this lesson was not fully mastered till we had another experience with France, and a decisive one with England.

The second experience with France came in the administration of John Adams. The French had indulged in the

pastime of capturing American vessels, and now looked upon Jay's treaty as an insult. They also resented the recall of Minister Monroe — a Democrat — and refused to receive C. C. Pinckney instead, or any other minister. In 1797 Gerry and Marshall were sent to join Pinckney. The Directory kept them waiting while its agents, X, Y, and Z, tried to secure a bribe of £50,000 as the condition of French favor. The ringing message of President Adams and the publication of the X, Y, Z correspondence kindled a flame of indignation. Democratic friendship for France was almost silenced; democracy was beginning to learn its lesson. Measures for war were rapidly pushed forward in the spring and summer of 1798; they included a land force, with Washington as commander-in-chief, and a further equipment of the navy. The war spirit ran high, and addresses of congratulation and expressions of enthusiastic support poured in on President Adams. The black cockade superseded the French tricolor in popular favor, and the elections of 1789 indicated a rising Federal tide. Subscriptions to extreme democratic papers fell off, particularly in the case of the *Aurora*, which had favored compliance with the corrupt demands of the Directory. This whole experience taught Jefferson and his Democratic-Republicans that little good and great harm were likely to result to their party from partisanship for France. While the term "French party" was still applied to them, yet from this time on it had little justification.

**Rapid Development of Anti-democratic Sentiment among the Federalists.** The Federalists now became over-confident as they saw themselves floating into power again on a wave of popularity. They thought the reaction an approval of their principles, while it was rather an expression of national feeling against France. When, therefore, they tried to transform this into a condemnation

of the democratic spirit of their opponents, they wrought their own destruction. Three measures were passed by congress in 1798 to accomplish this end: 1. An amendment to the naturalization law, extending the term of preliminary residence from five to fourteen years. 2. An act concerning aliens which gave the president power to order them to depart from the country if he considered them dangerous to its welfare. Disobedience to his decree was punishable by imprisonment, and forfeiture of citizenship forever. 3. An act to punish citizens by fine and imprisonment for opposing the national administration by combination or by scandalous or malicious writing. This act demonstrated thorough distrust of freedom of discussion and of the tendencies of American democracy. These acts, and the attempts to enforce the last one, mark the extreme application of national authority by the adherents of strong government to protect it against the opposition. The reaction expressed in the election of Jefferson in 1800 showed that the people were no more ready to follow the attempt to suppress democracy than they were to suppress nationality. The instincts and judgment of the people were entirely correct in refusing to follow either, for the perpetuity of the nation demanded that nationality should become democratic, as well as that democracy should become nationalistic.

The immediate result of this legislation was the Kentucky and Virginia resolutions, prepared by Jefferson and Madison, and passed by their legislatures. They protested against the Alien and Sedition laws, set forth the nature of the national government, and deduced therefrom the grounds of opposition. There were three main points to each: 1. The Constitution is a compact between sovereign states, and the national government is one of limited and specified powers. 2. The sovereign states are the

judges of violations of the compact. 3. In cases of palpable and dangerous violations it is the duty of the states to "interpose," said Virginia, and "nullify," said Kentucky. These resolutions were the most extreme assertion as yet made of the principle of state sovereignty as a means of protecting democracy in its struggle for existence. While they called the attention of the country, in an official way, to the dangers of the new legislation, the people did not rally enthusiastically to their support. In fact, not another legislature voted them as the sentiment of its state, while several condemned them. It was thus tolerably evident that one extreme was offsetting the other.

In spite of the reaction against the Alien and Sedition laws, the Federalists were in favor, in 1799 and 1800, of keeping up a good military and naval force and of extending the scope of the national judiciary. The latter was accomplished by a national bankrupt act which gave district courts plenty of work, and by a bill which established circuit courts, circuit judges, and provided facilities for appeals from state to national courts. In fact, this last measure was passed after Jefferson's election, and the appointments under it were incomplete when Jefferson took his seat. The extension of the national judiciary and the appointment of John Marshall as Chief Justice exerted a powerful influence in preventing real injury to the national system by the success of Jefferson's anti-national followers.

**The Triumph of Democracy.** The political battle in 1800 was another phase of the contest between nationality and democracy. It was the first organized and successful effort of the latter to get hold of the machinery of power. The campaign of 1800 was contested with great passion, and each party professed to see, in the success of the other, great danger to the country. The

causes of the defeat of the Federal party were: 1. The aristocratic tendencies of its leaders, which led some of the common people who followed them for a time, finally to desert for more congenial associations. Not only did these leaders believe in and advocate government by means of position and influence, but they scarcely tried to conceal their distrust of the common people. 2. An excessive dependence upon national power, and the knowledge that many Federal leaders advocated its further extension, even to invading the reserved rights of the states. 3. The presence of irreconcilable factions in the party—one clustering around Hamilton, the other supporting President Adams. This fact of itself was proof of the degeneracy of the party that had done a noble work in establishing power.

No one doubted that Jefferson was meant for the first place by his party, but still the result was long delayed, and if moderate counsel had not prevailed among the Federalists, it is hard to say what the result would have been. This last episode rendered them more unpopular with the masses.

The defeat of the Federalists was not the death of nationality. The success of the anti-Federalists, then generally called Republicans, was not the triumph of the extreme principles of their party. Whatever pledges they had made must now be modified by the fact that they are to work through national machinery. The operation of this machinery could not be obstructed, for this would discredit the party. Besides, what harm could come to democracy while its leaders were in control? Jefferson's inaugural was intended to allay fears of reactionary measures, and to indicate a purpose to win over the moderates of the opposition. Jefferson wrote that he wished "to restore that harmony which our

predecessors so wickedly made it their object to break, to render us again one people, acting as one nation." His moderation is further revealed in his inaugural by the statement in regard to the proper position of the state and national governments: "The support of the state governments in all their rights as the most competent administrations for our domestic concerns, and the surest bulwarks against anti-republican tendencies; the preservation of the general government in its whole constitutional vigor as the sheet anchor of our peace at home and safety abroad." The above quotations are the keynote to his moderation in making removals from office, and the middle course the party took in carrying out its policy.

Four reforms were immediately undertaken: 1. Repeal of the law extending the Federal courts, and the impeachment of obnoxious judges. The former was accomplished, but the latter was only partially successful. It was found impossible to secure the conviction of so bitter a partisan as Judge Chase. The failure to intimidate the judiciary left the national system impregnable. 2. The repeal of internal taxes. We have already seen how the people resented this form of taxation and objected to the burden imposed. This necessitated great retrenchment in national expenditures. The civil service, the army, and the navy were cut down. 3. The naturalization law was restored to its former condition, thus proving democracy the friend of the foreigner who sought a home in America. 4. As a fourth proof, Jefferson abolished the forms and ceremonies that had grown up between the legislative and executive departments, and simplified social affairs connected with his office. Jefferson thoroughly opposed courtly ceremonial and official parade as entirely inconsistent

with republicanism. He was not a good speaker, hence he broke the custom of reading in person his message to Congress, established by Washington. Jefferson's plan of sending the message to Congress was continued till President Wilson, a Democratic President, returned to the older custom of Washington (1913). Jefferson determined himself to set the example of one who ruled a great people by the merit of his work, and not by the external trappings so characteristic of the governments of Europe.

The popularity of these measures and of Jefferson's general conduct was rapidly demonstrated by the constant accessions to his party. His whole policy made it evident that his opponents had intentionally misrepresented him and his party, or had misunderstood the intention and spirit of democracy.

### Mutual Approach of Nationality and Democracy.

**General Features of this Phase.** Gradually democracy and nationality began to cease to battle against each other, and more and more to find the highest good of one to be the greatest good of the other. The changed circumstances and relations wrought by the preceding struggle made its continuance well-nigh impossible. 1. Democracy had not always been hostile to nationality, although its opponents so argued. 2. It was awkward for Federalists to oppose the new administration by urging it to a more vigorous exercise of national power. In fact, they soon advocated strict construction of the Constitution, thus abandoning their old ground to their opponents. 3. Unless the democracy of the country could develop common sympathies over common objects, it could not maintain itself. Very evidently the party must enter on a well-defined policy, and bring

into harmonious coöperation all its elements of support. Mere party success, therefore, tended to call into being an organization with national features. 4. The very complete success of Jefferson's party in both state and nation, by the close of his first administration, placed a vast responsibility on its shoulders. It could meet this only by a vigorous exercise of power.

But Democratic leaders did not aim to centralize power, and continued to make their confession in terms of strict construction. The explanation is partly found in the fact that the circumstances of the new situation were not correctly divined, and that the growth of interest among the masses in national questions and their readier response to the sentiment of nationality were largely unconscious. This is particularly true of the movement up to the War of 1812. From this date till 1820 the people are more and more conscious that the old Jeffersonian democracy is moving in new directions. In the analysis and interpretation of this new phase of the relation between nationality and democracy, the narration of events will be omitted as far as possible, since the only purpose is to reveal to the student the process by which these two forces began to approach each other.

**Significance of the Purchase of Louisiana (1803).** The purchase was the greatest event of Jefferson's administration, and, because of its effect upon nationality, may properly be taken as opening the new movement. After the leading incidents of the purchase are in hand, attention must be turned to the bearing of the event on the problem before us. 1. The fact of the purchase, and that no such acquisition of foreign territory was possible under the Confederation, may be taken as a measure of the distance national sentiment had traveled

since 1789. 2. The purchase produced a profound effect upon the settlers of the Southwest by checking their growing hostility to the national government. Now their interests were secure and their commerce moved unchecked to the Gulf and the Atlantic states. Commercial connection was no small factor in binding these people to the rest of the Union. The strength of this growth and its value to the Union were put to the test when Burr formed his conspiracy. Had his expedition been made earlier, while the people were disaffected, it might have been successful. 3. The possession of land beyond the Mississippi gave added weight to arguments for a system of internal improvement, and no doubt influenced the construction of the great National Road, whose western terminus was to be St. Louis. The possession of the Mississippi with its tributaries gave an unlimited opportunity to Fulton's invention, which was soon plying the great river and its connections, and thus by rapid communication aided in consolidating the parts of the Union. 4. Almost a million square miles, added to our national domain, seemed to offer unlimited opportunity for the expansion of population and the creation of new states. This, with the states from the old Northwest, which were to bear the same relation to the Union, profoundly affected national sentiment, and even changed the nature of the Union. These new states are the creatures of the nation, while the old thirteen were its creators. They could not look back with pride to a period of independent existence. Their people had different feelings toward the nation from those of the people of the older states, and in the main this difference was on the side of love and admiration for the rising nation. 5. The preservation of the balance of power between sections

had been an object of solicitude since the constitutional convention. The purchase was bitterly opposed in New England as destroying its position in the Union, and caused threats of secession. For the time, national spirit declined in this section, but remotely the purchase gave a great preponderance to the free over the slave states, and thus contributed powerfully to save the Union in the Civil War. 6. Immediately the purchase argued for nationality by demonstrating the impracticability of strict construction. Strict construction was a fundamental principle in the creed of Jefferson's party, but he and his party consciously violated it because it stood in the way of a great national interest. Jefferson thought his purchase quite revolutionary, for he suggested amending the Constitution to ratify his action. His party did not take his suggestion seriously, thus showing its lack of interest in making good one of its old dogmas and its willingness to be responsible for an act that did vastly more to consolidate national power than any act of either Hamilton or Adams.[1]

**Foreign Aggressions, 1803–1812.** This heading is selected to name the external causes of an internal growth on the part of Americans. Already it has been mentioned that the tendency in this phase of development is for democracy and nationality to approach each other. This process of mutual approach goes on more rapidly than ever before, for the need of each for the other is more continuous and pressing. This growth is checked

[1] "However its statesmen might declaim about original compact, whatever Republican conventions might declare, the great empire beyond the Mississippi was to stand forever as a contradiction of their theories. Thereafter no man could, in the country store, around the post-office stove, on the courthouse steps, at the country fair, or upon the road, advance the 'compact' theory of the government, without being liable to have the Louisiana purchase thrown in his face."—Walker's *Making of the Nation*, p. 184.

and limited by the rise of a counter movement mainly confined to New England and the middle states. This anti-national sentiment connected itself with sympathy for England, and thus brought upon itself the odium of being unpatriotic.

During the Confederation constant complaint was made against England's attitude toward her former colonies. This was continued down to Jay's treaty, and hardly ceased then. The Napoleonic wars caused its renewal. There were three main causes: 1. Seizure of neutral goods in American vessels. 2. Searching American vessels for former British seamen. 3. Impressment of American seamen. A fourth set of circumstances greatly aggravated the above, namely, the blockading and other decrees of both Napoleon and England.

**The Democracy's Efforts at Redress.** Democracy is now in a process of transition, and tries to solve the most intricate problems of international relations by means consistent with its past profession of principles; but the new circumstances with their almost unsolvable problems force a modification of these principles. Democracy cannot escape the laws of continuity and differentiation; hence what was done must partake of a double nature and seem inconsistent with its past, while in fact it was the highest kind of consistency. Jefferson and his party, in carrying out their programme, had curtailed both army and navy, and had reduced taxation to a strictly peace basis. But the above aggressions betokened war, and the problem was to coerce England especially, and avoid war. The following measures are referred to as briefly as possible for the puprose of discovering their double significance: how they connected themselves with the general spirit of democracy, and how they tended to transform and nationalize its spirit.

1. A naval militia, or local gunboats, was the first measure to secure protection to American commercial interests. The plan was to furnish seaports with the means of self-defence. In the absence of danger the gunboat was to be out of water, and the crew about their usual occupations. This appeared to be a promising mode of avoiding heavy naval expenditures. But even this took over a million and a half of Jefferson's surplus and really accomplished little by way of defence.

2. The next were negotiations with England looking to a settlement of difficulties. England refused to surrender impressments, to admit "that free ships make free goods," and to open her West Indian ports to us. A treaty, completed in December, 1806, Jefferson did not submit to the senate, knowing full well that public sentiment would resent the insult. Democracy justified his refusal to barter American seamen for a few paltry European trade concessions which England would not obey longer than European complications made it desirable.

3. In the same year, 1806, congress passed a Non-importation Act, another democratic measure of coercion. England was injured somewhat, but America was not benefited; the struggle with Napoleon was too intense for her to notice the harm we inflicted.

4. These measures failed and Jefferson summoned congress in extra session and recommended the Embargo. Three days' debate in the house and four hours' in the senate sufficed to satisfy the majority. Indeed the nation's pride was deeply stung, and no doubt it felt the words uttered by John Quincy Adams: "The president has recommended the measure on his high responsibility. I would not consider, I would not

deliberate, I would act." This law proves that the president exercised vast national powers over commerce, such as none of his predecessors had dared. His judgment was to decide whether American ships were to go abroad, and his decision was to be backed by the navy and revenue cutters. A majority of Federalists in the middle states and New England were indignantly hostile to the measure, and the traders in the great ports were soon actively engaged in eluding the law. Smuggling found a supporting public sentiment, especially in Boston and New York. The carrying trade and its allied interests looked upon the Embargo as purposely planned for their injury. Jefferson had created the impression that he was hostile to foreign commerce, and so he found his record on the question standing in the way of the law. The result was that New England Federalists became more and more anti-national, and were guilty, under the exasperation of injury, of speaking words of sympathy for England. A few even recommended submission to British indignity as had been done by the French faction. The legislatures of several states protested strongly against the Embargo. The spirit of opposition grew bolder after the act was amended in 1809 so as to extend the power of the president; the law was printed in mourning type, revolutionary mottoes were displayed, and hints were thrown out of a New England convention to inquire into the reserved rights of the states. However, matters in New England were not all running toward sectionalism, for a number of aggressive Republicans fought for the national policy, and found their ranks strengthened by the patriotic conduct of John Quincy Adams and other men of note. The disunion scare, the immense injury to all American interests, and the failure to produce any effect on either

England or France led to the repeal of the Embargo in the spring of 1809.

**Effects on the Progress of Democracy and Nationality.** Great results had been wrought out in this contest: 1. The Republican party, which was more and more in its composition becoming identical with American democracy had fairly committed itself to the exercise of vast national power. Democracy was therefore beginning to occupy, with a courage born of experience, good old Federal ground. 2. The failure of the Embargo and of other peaceable means of coercion forced upon the country the conviction that war was a necessity. The continued conduct of England was producing gradually a war party within the ranks of the democracy. 3. The remnant of the Federal party had become pretty thoroughly sectional, and was beginning to make its political confessions in terms of the Kentucky and Virginia resolutions. 4. A fourth phase of public sentiment appeared in the vehement accusations of these two parties, each against the other, of friendship for France and enmity toward England, or *vice versa*. This resulted in each party trying to avoid this cause of distrust for the future, so that when Non-intercourse was substituted for the Embargo, France and England were formally placed on the same footing. 5. Another fact containing the germ of a greater nationality grew out of the Embargo, namely, the rise of new industries and the expansion of those already established.

**The War of 1812 as a Product of the National Spirit.** So far as the series of events called the War of 1812 is concerned, the process of interpretation has been begun in the preceding study. The main features of this first stage of public sentiment may be referred to again in order to trace them as factors in the production of the

war: 1. An extreme anti-national sentiment opposed to war and to the exercise of national power by the party in office. 2. A peace and strict-construction sentiment existing among the old Republicans, and on occasions coalescing with the Federalists. 3. A rising national and war sentiment which found its principal supporters in the Republican party, and in a small contingent of patriotic Federalists whose party had deserted them. The war element had the solid and enthusiastic support of the new states. The people of the new states and territories were more uniformly democratic and national than the populations of the old states; more democratic because the rough life of the frontier equalized conditions to a marvelous extent; more national because they were the creatures of the nation and felt their great dependence upon it. "Here no pride of statehood diminished the affection and devotion of the citizen to the government under which he held the title to his land; to which he looked for protection from the savage foe; which opened up the navigation of the rivers to his clumsy flatboat; which endowed the school in which his children learned to read. Constitutional scruples were at a discount with these rude, strong, brave men. . . . They wanted a government, and a strong government; and in the continually growing power of the Republic they found the competent object of their civic trust and pride and love."[1] Originally followers of Jefferson, their peculiar life led them into the ranks of the aggressive portion of the party, while their harassing experiences with the Indians, due, as they thought, to British agents, made them early and enthusiastic advocates of war. The above is also applicable to the mountain populations of the older states. This sentiment soon found a number

[1] Walker's *Making of the Nation*, p. 171.

of advocates in the national councils. Its chief exponents were Henry Clay and John C. Calhoun, who were ably seconded by Felix Grundy, Langdon, Cheves, and Porter. These men, aided by England's continued bad conduct, forced the peace-loving and timid Madison into war.

In making this interpretation it must not be forgotten that this war party, in spite of its great strides toward nationality, had inherited the legitimate fruits of that earlier democracy which doted on low taxes, a small navy, and a smaller army. The preservation of this condition had been a great argument for Jefferson's foreign policy. It was now a disaster to the country. Even now, on the verge of war with the greatest naval power of the world, the democracy of the nation could not quite recharter Hamilton's bank, and establish an efficient navy. It showed wonderful progress that the bank was defeated by but one vote, and that something was done toward a navy, but the "miss was as good as a mile." Of course nothing was more national in that day than the United States bank and the navy. The former touched the currents of trade everywhere, and its notes, bearing the national stamp, were no respecters of state lines. But even more was the navy the representative of national power. It stood as the visible symbol of national dignity to all foreign nations, and ready to assail them in defence of its people. A disinterested patriotism ought to have dictated a great navy, especially since the commercial states called for it. This failure gave point to opponents of the war. Aside from these failures, the war democracy was enthusiastic in the use of national powers, as the following measures enacted between 1811 and 1815 prove: an embargo preliminary to war, a doubling of the tariff, an

excise and a stamp act, provision for a great national debt, larger regular army, an army of volunteers, regulations pertaining to the use of the state militia, and finally, the administration was screwing up its courage for a conscription law and for government paper money. Most of these measures had been passionately denounced by the party in the campaign of 1800. The people were not inconsistent; they had grown.

The bearing of national sentiment on the progress of the war may be seen in the fact that where devotion to the nation was most universal, there the greatest victories were won, and where this was at its lowest ebb, there occurred the greatest disasters. No anti-national sentiment could reach our navy on lake or sea, and the navy was the glory of the war.

**Opposition to the War.** Opposition to the declaration of war was strongest in New England and New York, but a few votes also came from other middle states and from the South. The progress of the conflict only intensified the hostility of New England. This section repeated in extremer fashion the methods of opposition used against the Embargo. The refusal of one or two governors to allow the state militia to be used by the nation, attempts of capitalists to prevent national loans, draining specie from southern and western banks, open expressions of favor for England, and finally, the Hartford Convention. These are all anti-national, particularly the last. It was popularly believed that its aim was the secession of New England from the Union. Its documents are thoroughly imbued with the state-sovereignty idea of the Kentucky and Virginia resolutions, as is amply demonstrated by the propositions set before the New England legislatures, and those recommended as amendments to the national Constitution.

**The War as a Factor in Nationalizing Democracy.** The second phase of interpretation is to discover how this war promoted the evolution of the national spirit. To do this accurately the student must remember that the movement in ideas and institutions set on foot by it are more important than its military events. And yet it must not be forgotten that war is a sort of seething caldron of human thought and mad passion. Into this are poured old ideas and apparently permanent habits of action. These dissolve into their original elements, and new combinations are formed from them. War is a time of bold initiative and courageous endeavor. Hence, we must expect the forces of nationality and democracy to come out of the war greatly modified. This is best discovered by looking into the content of the great measures that followed peace.

1. The national debt was over $120,000,000, while currency and credit were in a deplorable condition. Gallatin, Jefferson's great financier, tried to forestall disaster by asking for a new bank charter in 1811. This was refused. War, with its lessons, came, and President Madison, Secretary Dallas, Speaker Clay and John C. Calhoun favored the bank's restoration in 1816. Its capital was more than three times that of Hamilton's bank, and it was as fully endowed with authority. While it was more national, it was more democratic; five of its directors were appointed by the president, and both congress and the secretary of the treasury were more directly connected with this than with the former. In 1811 Henry Clay opposed the bank in an elaborate argument based on strict construction and true to the ancient ideals of his party; in 1816 he was just as enthusiastic for the bank, and his argument would have done credit to Hamilton. Clay was not inconsistent, but he had grown in knowledge and practical experience.

2. The Embargo and war cut off foreign importations, and at the same time greatly injured American capital employed in the carrying trade. This unintentional and injurious result gave origin to a phase of economic life which profoundly influenced the course of nationality. By 1815 America had made great strides toward economic independence. Peace threatened to overwhelm the new industries by English competition. The nation was appealed to for defensive measures, and the party which had created conditions calling them into existence responded promptly and patriotically with a protective tariff. Madison himself argued for protection to industries tending to make us independent of foreign production. The champions of this tariff were the leaders of the war party; its opponents were Federalists and a few Republicans who still held to old party standards. But the majority of this party were now consciously using national power for the development of national resources.

3. Again, war brought peace with the Indians, and population rapidly moved westward never to be checked till the Pacific was reached. Ohio in 1810 numbered only 230,000, but in 1820, 580,100. In 1810 Indiana had but 24,800, while in 1820 the population had risen to 147,000. Thus were social and economic reasons added to military necessity in favor of internal improvements. It had been the dream of Jefferson to apply the surplus which his economy had created to the unification of America by canals and roads, constructed by the coöperation of the state and national governments. John C. Calhoun in 1816 and 1817 presented a bill to create a national fund for internal improvement. The agitation went steadily on as new states rapidly rose in the West. Appropriations had already been made for the Cumberland Road. After the war the demand came for its

extension to the westward under the name of the National Road. So far had sentiment grown away from the old point of view that the national Republicans made internal improvements a cardinal point in their program, and more than two and a quarter millions were appropriated for this purpose during John Quincy Adams's administration.

The final decline of sentiment in favor of national aid to roads and canals was not due to a decline in nationality, but because the steamboat and the railroad were beginning to meet the demand for rapid and easy social and commercial communication. Fulton's invention was successful in 1807, and at the opening of the War of 1812 steamboats were appearing on western rivers. After the war their numbers grew rapidly; their work in binding the East to the West was of untold value to the nation, although it was largely a process whose significance was not then seen.

4. The war destroyed both the organization of the Federalists and the original doctrines of the Republicans. All that was vital in the former was developed and applied by the new Republicans. All that was dangerous in the Jeffersonian democracy was absorbed by the Federalists as an opposition party. As the contest went on democracy constantly gained and aristocracy as constantly lost. Federalism not only became narrow, but also unpatriotic. It found no place among the hardy western populations, because aristocracy does not emigrate. Federalism disappeared in name in the Era of Good Feeling. Its old leaders had passed away; its younger members found congenial company among the National Republicans. On its political side the Era of Good Feeling marked the final disappearance of the difference that had separated democracy and nationality. And while the party calling itself

Democratic does go on mumbling the Jeffersonian formulæ, yet the body of its members does not oppose, but generally favors, nationality.

5. During the greater part of the era marked by the transformation of American democracy, a series of decisions of vast consequence to the development of the nation were handed down by the Supreme Court. John Marshall had been made Chief Justice by John Adams just as the Federalist party was passing from power. Although deserted by his party, Marshall was faithful to the work appointed for him to do. Steadily there fell from his pen a series of decisions touching the powers of the nation under the Constitution. In 1816 the Supreme Court demonstrated its right to be the final interpreter of the Constitution, thus limiting the power of state courts. Later Marshall rendered a decision justifying a resort to implied powers in the creation of the bank; in 1810, and again in 1819, he denied the power of the state legislature to impair the obligations of contracts. Public sentiment was not shocked at the principles announced in these decisions, thus showing how much it had grown, especially between 1810 and 1820.

6. The war exerted many subtle effects on the mutual movements of nationality and democracy. None were more so than the effect upon what may be termed American literary thought. No other department of life yielded so slowly to the inspiring touch of nationality and democracy. Before the war little was produced which could be called literature, and less that was national in tone, although there was much controversial writing over politics. The literary men were generally out of sympathy with the democratic movements of the period, and seldom found subjects relating to American life and tendencies to inspire their pens. The few writers were generally

imitators of European standards. The nationalizing effect of the war showed itself in the field of literature, for now there arose men who soon won fame for America. Among them may be named Paulding, Irving, Bryant, Cooper, Halleck, Drake, Percival, and Sprague. In 1815 was founded the *North American Review*. As early as 1811 was established that famous old journal, *Niles' Weekly Register*, whose intense Americanism did much to stimulate national pride. A new race of orators, deeply imbued with an ardor truly patriotic, now sprang into existence.

**Significance of the Era of Good Feeling.** This is partly discovered in the facts immediately preceding. Its deeper meaning lies in the fact that it was the culmination of the movement for the nationalization of American democracy and for the popularizing of American nationality. Then was political disintegration complete and political animosity forgotten. President Monroe's journey, as far eastward as Boston and westward as Detroit, furnishes sufficient evidence that there was once more a president of the whole people.[1] It was also an age of political integration, for in the crisis of the election in 1824 men of Federal antecedents and the National Republicans coalesced and elected John Quincy Adams. This presaged a new party. In this campaign each section had its candidate, and so strongly were the people attached to their favorite sons that they refused to abide by the customary action of the congressional caucus. This

[1] It was a Boston paper that called this period "the era of good feeling." Another Boston paper said that "the visit of the president seems to have wholly allayed the storm of party. People now meet in the same room who a short while since would scarcely pass along the same street." A third stated that "the visit has a more direct tendency than any other to remove prejudices, to harmonize feelings, annihilate dissensions, and make us indeed one people." In Hartford the president was called a "political father and guide." —McMaster, vol. iv. pp. 379–380.

institution had stood between the presidency and the people, but it was now forever destroyed. The destruction of this undemocratic piece of machinery shows a tendency of the people to directly participate in national affairs; they were greatly stimulated by the presence of presidential candidates from so many parts of the country. The common people took a sort of personal interest, not before witnessed, in the campaign because of their warm personal regard for the candidates. This was also prophetic.

### The Fusion of Nationality and Democracy Working out its Results

**General Significance.** We now enter upon the last phase of the relationship of nationality and democracy as an organizing idea. The collisions and coöperations between these two mighty forces had worn down the differences separating them so that they now practically moved in harmony. The most fundamental result of this fusion as it worked itself out in national affairs has been the deep and abiding interest of the common people. In this phase, for the first time in American history, they actually came into possession of the machinery of the national government. Heretofore they had been led; now they took the lead or furnished leaders. The tendency toward an aristocracy of office-holders now began to disappear, and new and untried men from among the common people came to the front. No doubt the grade of American statesmanship was for a time lowered by the introduction of so much inexperience, but the thorough nationalization of the common people was a result of immeasurable consequence to the country in the day of its greatest trial. No one can tell what that result might have been had not the common people come to feel that their fate is bound up with that of the nation.

**Significance of Jackson's Election.** Old things were passing away and all things were becoming new. In nothing is the change so evident as in the campaign which elected Jackson in 1828. Some of its methods and characteristics were foreshadowed in the contest of 1824. The following brief statements will further aid in reaching a correct interpretation of the campaign as a whole.

1. Jackson's followers opened the contest immediately after the election of Adams. The nominating caucus was gone, and a more popular method was instituted for getting Jackson before the people. The first step was for the legislature of Tennessee, in 1825, to recommend Jackson to the people. By means of correspondence, public meetings were held to endorse this action; the most notable was in Philadelphia in 1826. The apparent spontaneity of the movement is shown by the frequent and pressing invitations to Jackson to address people in all parts of the country. In 1827 the legislature of Louisiana invited him to join with the people in celebration of the victory of New Orleans. Delegations from distant states united to make this the greatest popular demonstration yet held in America. In 1828 popular enthusiasm took up Jackson's cause, and erected hickory poles in many parts of the nation to testify their appreciation of his peculiar character. The above methods were in themselves telling arguments addressed to the imagination and feeling of the masses. These brought General Jackson before the people and created a personal interest in him. In the course of this campaign, papers sprang into existence for the special purpose of promoting Jackson's candidacy. In congress the opposition organized to obstruct every movement and measure of Adams's administration. They aimed to discredit him in the eyes of the nation. The student will readily see that these methods of

campaigning, though not heretofore in use, and not of the highest order, are yet calculated to win the populace.

2. The arguments of the campaign were new and carried tremendous meaning. In the first place, they did not bear on the relative statesmanship of Jackson and Adams. Perhaps the first argument used in the campaign was that Jackson had been cheated out of the presidency by a corrupt bargain between Adams and Clay. There was no truth in the charge, as was demonstrated, but Jackson and his campaigners never ceased to reiterate the story, till it was believed by thousands of people. A second reason urged in favor of Jackson was that congress had violated the democratic spirit in electing Adams. Jackson had received a larger vote, both popular and electoral, than any other candidate. This, said Jackson men, should have determined the matter. The significance of this argument lies in its contrast with the way Jefferson and his followers would have argued. They would have said there are two modes of electing a president; the Constitution does not even suggest that the results of one mode shall determine the result for the other. But Jacksonian democracy exalts the temporary opinion of the people above the Constitution, and therefore logically throws strict construction to the winds. The meaning of this with reference to nationalization is very clear when we recall that the method by which Adams was elected is the very essence of state sovereignty itself. Perhaps the most effective argument with the masses was that General Jackson himself was a man sprung from their own class, while President Adams and his supporters were a different sort of people altogether, and had nothing in common with them. Adams and Clay, in particular, they held, belonged to a sort of office-holding aristocracy that

had aimed to perpetuate itself by the congressional caucus, the succession of secretaries, limited suffrage, and the legislative election of the electoral college. But General Jackson is one of the people. In his military capacity he has ever been the friend and the idol of the common soldiers; he shared their hardships on the march and in the camp, and in battle was their leader. We, therefore, want him for our president; he will indeed be the people's president. There was much truth and some error in this sort of argument, but the significant thing is that the plain people of the West and South, in portions of the middle states, and the artisans in the large cities were powerfully taken by such appeals. They longed to see themselves, in the person of Andrew Jackson, in possession of the great office. The result was in harmony with their feelings, for Jackson received nearly a hundred more electoral votes than Adams. No doubt the unselfish resolution of Adams to make no effort in his own behalf, especially by the use of patronage, contributed to Jackson's majority. It is very apparent that the campaign as a whole indicates the coming supremacy of the people.

**Jackson's Rule Interpreted.** Jackson's rule was foreshadowed by his compaign. The cabinet contained no man of statesmanlike ability, with the possible exception of Van Buren. Jackson dominated it completely, and directed its work with the same vigor and dispatch displayed in conducting Indian campaigns; Jackson possessed, in an intensified way, the strength and the weakness of a frontier farmer. He recognized but two classes of men,—friends and enemies; these were always personal and never political. He felt that men of wealth had been favored by the government; the plain people, the farmers and the artisans, had been neglected, and now their time had come. In trying to get at the true meaning of the

events and measures of this administration, as little attention as possible will be given to details.

1. The inauguration was simply a continuation of the campaign; the noisy demonstrations attending the event proved that the people came to see themselves inaugurated. No such crowds, and no such people had before been drawn to witness the ceremony. One compared it to the invasion of Rome by the Goths and Vandals, another to the reign of King Mob, and Webster said the crowd acted as if they thought the country had been "rescued from some dreadful danger." It was significant that nearly all the Jackson editors in the country were there.

2. Wholesale removal from office was the first startling event. Spoilsmen in and out of the cabinet no doubt hastened it, but it had to come, for it was the logic of events as interpreted by the president. He plainly said, and more deeply felt, that the demonstration of public sentiment in the election imposed upon him the duty of reforming the federal patronage. In view of principles controlling all his predecessors, especially the retiring executive, and in view of the tendency of the campaign just closed, reform of patronage could mean but one thing, —the substitution of the friends of the administration for those in office. About the only good result of the new departure was to interest the common people more thoroughly in national affairs. The basis of this interest may have been selfish, but it had to have a beginning; that it rose above the mere greed of office and partisan success is well attested by the sacrifices made by the people of the North to save the Union in 1861. However, it began to appear that no national movement could be successful without the backing of the new democracy.

3. In his message to congress in December of 1829, Jackson opened his long fight against the United States

Bank. He declared that it was "considered unconstitutional by a large portion of our fellow-citizens." The Supreme Court had decided it constitutional, but that did not matter since the highest court — the people — thought it unconstitutional. This sounds like the claim made by Jackson's friends when congress elected Adams in the face of a plurality of the popular vote for Jackson. In his message to congress in 1831, Jackson disclosed his opinions concerning the bank, "in order that the attention of the legislature and the people" should be called to it, and he now proposed "to leave it for the present to the investigation of an enlightened people and their representatives." This repeated reference to the people is most significant. Benton confesses that the opponents of the bank in congress aimed by their method of attack to "rouse the people, and prepare them to sustain the veto." Among other things the veto said: "But when the laws undertake to add . . . artificial distinction, to grant titles, gratuities, and exclusive privileges, to make the rich richer and the potent more powerful, the humble members of society, the farmers, mechanics, and laborers, . . . have a right to complain of the injustice of their government . . . If sustained by my fellow-citizens I shall be grateful and happy . . . "

4. The campaign of 1832 was, in its methods, an evolution of that of 1828. Jackson recommended amending the Constitution to secure the election of the president by a direct vote of the people, a new idea coming from a president. He also advised making the president ineligible for reëlection. But it did not take much manœuvering to produce a "spontaneous" demand for his reëlection. A suggestion was now offered that Jackson be nominated at a great national convention of the party. This brought the selection of president one step nearer the people. The

parties held nominating conventions. This campaign gained a still deeper hold on the feelings of the people. There were day parades with fife, drum, and banners, night demonstrations with torchlight processions and transparencies, pole-raisings, speeches, banquets, pamphlets, cartoons, and other features of laterday campaigns. The defeat of Clay and the bank was overwhelming, the electoral vote being 219 to 49 in favor of Jackson. The new "court" had rendered another decision, and Jackson carried an order for the bank's annihilation. His message in December, 1832, questioned the safety of the national deposits, and said that rumors, widely current, called for an investigation. Congress gave the bank a vote of confidence, but the president ordered the deposits removed, in 1833, to certain state banks. To a secretary opposing the removal, the president said: "My object is to save the country; it will be lost if we permit the bank to exist."

5. The number of state banks rapidly increased, creating greater competition for national deposits. Congress passed an act in 1836 depositing the surplus revenue with the states, subject to recall. Money was thus placed where the people could get it easily; prices, except of public land which was fixed by law, rose rapidly. Hence, speculators bought government land to hold for higher prices.[1] Thousands of depreciated state-bank notes were received by the government in payment for public land; Jackson became alarmed, and in July, 1836, issued the order that specie alone be accepted for land. Gold and silver moved westward, paper money eastward; business

[1] This is not intended as an adequate explanation of the extent and character of the speculation which took hold of individuals, corporations, and states alike. It does not assume to state all the causes of the resulting explosion, but rather indicates the part which popular sentiment — the conscious power behind the throne — acting on congress and the administration, played in the management of the national finances.

was disturbed, and confidence undermined. In the spring of 1837 the crash came. Jackson was just retiring from the presidency, but the rank and file were every now and then to hear the old leader's voice speaking through Van Buren.

6. Between 1837 and 1840 the people began to distrust the leaders who brought such distress upon the nation. Perhaps they did not recall that, in the main, these leaders had reflected the people's wishes in financial matters. Van Buren's great remedy, the Independent Treasury, did not strongly appeal to popular favor; it was preventive, rather than curative, while the popular demand was for the removal of present distress. The measure brought no immediate support to the administration, for it was generally viewed by the voters as a selfish desertion of the country by the government.

**The Campaign of 1840.** The significance of this extraordinary campaign lies largely in the fact that the Whig party greatly developed the Jacksonian methods of stirring popular enthusiasm. While this party was far less aristocratic and conservative than the old Federalist, yet, as a rule, it was not nearly so popular in its make-up and measures as its rival. However, in this presidential contest it obtained so tremendous a hold on popular favor that it promised for a time to become the real people's party.

The intense distress produced by the panic, and the apparently indifferent attitude of the administration concerning measures of relief, created dissatisfaction among the rank and file of the Democratic party. They had been taught to believe in the nation's ability to do well or ill by the people. The contrast between Van Buren and Harrison was not unlike that between Adams and Jackson in 1828. In the minds of the people Harrison was the

honest Western farmer and courageous frontier soldier; Van Buren was the Eastern politician, and had always held office; Harrison was one of the people, having their ideas and feelings, and could be trusted to serve them; Van Buren was the "little aristocrat," lived in grand style at Washington, and had forgotten the lessons of Jefferson and Jackson. A popular campaign speech pictured the White House as a royal palace and its occupants feasting like the Cæsars.

In 1837 the Ohio Whig convention nominated Harrison and, like Jackson, Harrison began to be pressed by invitations. In 1838 he visited Tippecanoe, the scene of his great victory over the Indians in 1811. Clubs and battle anniversaries became the order of the day, till the national Whig convention named him in preference to Clay, Webster, or Scott. And now began in earnest a contest, by the side of which the campaign of 1832 pales into insignificance. The Harrison demonstrations numbered all the way from a few to a hundred thousand persons. People traveled hundreds of miles and processions were days upon the road. It took fourteen teams of horses three weeks to carry the people from Chicago to Springfield to hear Lincoln speak. Twenty thousand people joined in these demonstrations in that straggling young village. The log cabin with its latchstring out, the raccoon, the barrel of cider on tap, the rolling ball, and the roasted ox played leading parts in rousing popular enthusiasm. To these were added, for the first time, "taking" campaign songs, which were widely employed in stimulating patriotic and partisan zeal. In all this the Whigs far excelled the Democrats, as the election demonstrated. Nineteen states voted for Harrison and seven for Van Buren, while the electoral vote was 234 to 60 in favor of the Whigs.

The joy of the people was unbounded. The Whig statesmen now spoke with the same authority as had Jackson. Listen to Clay as he speaks to the Senate in December, 1840, on the repeal of the Independent Treasury bill: "The nation wills the repeal of the measure, the nation decrees the repeal of the measure, and the nation commands the repeal of the measure, and the representatives of nineteen states were sent here instructed to repeal it." This reveals the immense distance separating the new from the old Federalism, and how completely nationality has identified itself with democracy, just as Jackson proved the close identity of democracy and nationality.

**An Era of National Pride.** The vast expenditure of energy during this period was not confined to political and economic problems. We were becoming proud of our past, and were not insensible to the fact that foreigners were beginning to notice our people and their institutions. Conscious of great things already achieved, and of the possibility of still greater achievements, Americans in this age hotly resented the one-sided criticism of foreigners like Dickens and Trollope.

Perhaps nothing, in a quiet way, made Americans prouder of their nation than its long list of celebrated names. Besides the revolutionary celebrities, the last of whom were rapidly passing away, and the military and naval heroes of 1812, the imaginations and hearts of the people were filled by the splendid abilities of the statesmen who still moved in their midst. But the list included more than warriors and statesmen; men were now springing into prominence in every field of activity. Longfellow, Whittier, and Holmes were joining Irving, Cooper, and Bryant in the field of literature, and Bancroft, our first great historian, was beginning his herculean

labors; while Webster's Dictionary was already raising the standard of national speech. Emerson was a rising philosopher and poet whose American pride rebelled against the worship of European formalism and tradition. Kent and Story were occupying the field of jurisprudence with masterly pens, and writers upon economics and political science were coming forward. Science was beginning to count some great names among eastern institutions, and already one polar expedition had done its work and returned with its story of adventure and discovery. Now came into existence those mighty engines of public opinion,—the great metropolitan newspapers. They were much like the politicians of the era, in that they tried to reflect the life of the people. Therefore they became really newsy papers, and at first, selling at a penny, their circulation increased enormously. In New York city the *Sun*, the *Herald*, and the *Tribune* set the fashion of the new departure. Before their advent political opinion had been largely molded by the party organ located at Washington city, and dependent for its existence on administrative favors; but the new paper was more independent, resting on the public for support, dictating policies and measures for the administration.

These mighty forces were producing a body of common thought and sentiment, creating a solidarity of interests in all sections and among all classes that even slavery could not destroy. Such was the function of the period from 1789 to 1840, and such was the result. Many facts touching this result could not be discussed. Important among these were the extension of suffrage, the growth of the government's land policy, increase of immigration, the Monroe Doctrine, party organization, increase of inventions, and the diffusion of wealth.

## NATIONALITY AND SLAVERY, 1820–1870

### Development of the Conflict.

**Origin of the Struggle.** The mutual conquest of nationality and democracy reached its fruition between 1820 and 1840. Had not the conflict over slavery blocked the way, these two mighty forces, now made one, would have carried the nation rapidly forward to that greatness attained only in our day. The new struggle differed from the old in that it was a struggle to the death, and although compromises were made, they only postponed the fatal day.

The earliest struggle of far-reaching importance occurred in the constitutional convention. It arose over questions of representation, direct taxation, and commerce. The immediate cause was the fact that the slave states had a smaller white population than the free states, and hence would be in a minority in the lower house of congress. But why? Did not the slave states have a richer soil and a more genial climate than the free states? Slavery was hostile to population; it occupied vast estates, built few towns, encouraged but one occupation,—agriculture,—brought the white laborer into competition with labor consuming the coarsest food and clothes, built few public schools, and put a social ban upon the non-slaveholder. For these reasons, there was a tendency on the part of non-slaveholders in early times, to avoid the South, and even leave it for the North. The tendency became a movement from 1840 to 1860. After a fierce battle, the convention agreed to count three-fifths of the slave population for both representatives and direct taxes. The South was predominantly agricultural, and, because of slavery, had only

a narrow range of agriculture. The South feared commercial restrictions by the North. The spirit in which these contests were waged is seen in the repeated threats of delegates from the Carolinas and Georgia to oppose the ratification of the Constitution.

The conditions which forced slavery to fight in self-defence, and the spirit in which it conducted the contest, constitute the fundamental causes of the struggle between nationality and slavery. These inhere in the system itself, and from the constitutional convention to the Missouri Compromise were operating against slavery. The French Revolution and the Napoleonic wars made life burdensome to Europeans, and they began to come to America. Where did they go? To the North. At the same time the slender stream of non-slaveholders, emigrating north and northwestward, was growing wider and deeper. The result of this movement of population is seen in the growing difference in the number of congressmen from the two sections. In 1790 the difference was but four in favor of the North, while by 1820, the period of the Missouri conflict, the gulf had widened to forty-three. In spite of the three-fifths advantage, slavery had hopelessly lost power in the House. The battle for the balance of power had long been transferred to the Senate. The states are equal here, population counting little. Since 1789 a sort of equilibrium had been maintained by the admission of states. Seven of the thirteen states were free or becoming so in 1789, and six were slave. The admission of Kentucky, Vermont, and Tennessee established an equilibrium. Ohio destroyed it in 1802, and Louisiana restored it in 1812. Indiana in 1816, Mississippi in 1817, Illinois in 1818, and Alabama in 1819 alternately destroyed and restored this political equality. But in

this last year Missouri applied for admission as a slave state. The North took alarm; it was not slavery's turn, and, if permitted, would give it a majority of two senators,—enough to block legislation and the admission of new states. Besides, slavery had encroached geographically upon the North, for at least four-fifths of the eastern boundary of this state rests against a free state. Further significance is given to the Missouri application by remembering that there are but two more slave territories.

Petitions in Washington's administration were presented by Quakers, requesting congress to use its constitutional powers to place some restriction on slavery. The spirit of the institution is revealed in the following arguments in its defence[1]: 1. The Quakers were denounced as hypocrites and cowards. 2. The petitions were unconstitutional, because violating guarantees on which the South ratified the Constitution. 3. Emancipation was a curse, and would lead to civil war. 4. The Bible and the southern clergy were not opposed to slavery. 5. The South could be cultivated by negroes only. 6. The slave-trade was a benefit to the negro.

**Meaning of the Missouri Struggle.**[2] The content of

[1] The slaveholder was a product of his environment, and a different product would not have resulted if the people of the North had been inhabitants of the South from colonial days. The spirit born of the system is well stated by Jefferson: "There must doubtless be an unhappy influence on the manners of our people, produced by the existence of slavery among us. The whole commerce between master and slave is a perpetual exercise of the most boisterous passions, the most unremitting despotism on the one part and degrading submission on the other. Our children see this and learn to imitate it.—Notes on the State of Virginia, pp. 169–170.

[2] Aside from the congressional debates, one of the best summaries of the arguments presented is found in Von Holst, vol. i., pp. 358–370. Schurz's *Clay*, vol. i., pp. 192–200, gives an interesting interpretation of the event. McMaster, vol. iv., pp. 570–600, shows the manifestations of popular sentiment over the affair.

this event has been partly indicated. The effect on public sentiment remains to be noted. The fight opened by proposing to prohibit the further carrying of slaves into Missouri, and to free all its future-born slaves upon reaching the age of twenty-five. The conflict lasted two years and excited the earnest attention of both sections. Feeling ran high in Congress; resistance was hinted, civil war was prophesied, and threats of secession were frequently made. The public participated in the excitement; meetings were held in town and city; county and state conventions, grand juries and legislatures joined in resolutions and protests. Northern congressmen, in some instances, were burned in effigy by their irate constituents. Others had to explain or defend their votes.

The effects of the battle may be summarized about as follows: 1. The South gained Missouri, but Maine was admitted, thus preserving the balance of power. 2. The South lost all territory north of the southern boundary line of Missouri. 3. The compromise, in effect, decided that congress could prohibit slavery in territories, thus establishing the principle of the future Free Soil platform. 4. The South learned that the weak point in the North's armor was the fear of a dissolution of the Union. 5. Threats of disunion carried ominous meaning. Patriotic men like Jefferson and Clay were profoundly alarmed over the situation. There was yet no consciousness of an irrepressible conflict. 6. The progress of pro-slavery sentiment in the South since 1787 is seen in the fact that no anti-slavery advocate appeared among her congressmen, while Virginia delegates in the constitutional convention and others were not friends to slavery.

**Slavery Nullifies the Tariff.** The significance of the contest between the nation and South Carolina is found

in the above heading. It was primarily an economic and social event; secondarily, a political one. The people generally looked upon it as merely a factional opposition to escape the payment of the tariff. Some believed the tariff only an excuse, and that the assertion and the execution of the doctrine of nullification was the real motive of the leaders. A small number have looked upon it as a struggle between leaders of factions in the Democratic party. These are superficial interpretations of the events and circumstances making up the situation.

The disappearance from the South of opposition to slavery and the rise of a strong pro-slavery sentiment were due to the vast development of the cotton industry from 1800 to 1830. English invention had aided in creating a demand for cotton; Whitney's gin enabled the South to meet that demand. These new conditions gave slavery a fresh lease of life by making it profitable. It must be noted that the growth was mainly along old lines,—merely an expansion of southern agriculture. In this period no new industries were born in the South, and she failed to diversify and render American industry independent of European competition. The inability of slavery to profit by the tariff was not apparent to southern leaders in 1816, for Calhoun, among others, was then a warm advocate of it. The experiment with protection from 1816 to 1828 revealed to leading thinkers of the South the startling fact that slavery was not only unable to take advantage of the tariff, but was, as they thought, greatly injured by it. Very few men from the cotton states voted for protection in 1824 and 1828.

The cry arose, How can the South protect her industrial system? This question ought to be translated to read: How can slavery be extricated from the position in

which it has placed itself? In the search for a way, the old doctrine of state sovereignty, which had done service in former days for both Republicans and Federalists, again came to the front. The theory of the Kentucky and Virginia resolutions was now to receive a new interpretation. Calhoun elaborated this doctrine for his people by his famous "South Carolina Exposition" in 1828. He pointed out a supposed permanent dissimilarity between the "staple states" and the remainder of the nation. This rests, he held, on differences in soil, climate, habits, and peculiar labor.[1] The remedy against legislation injurious to the South, in Calhoun's view, is a veto of it by the state. The next step in the process was the Webster-Hayne debate in 1830. Hayne promulgated in congress the doctrine of state sovereignty, with its accompanying "compact" theory of the national Constitution, and nullification as a rightful and peaceable remedy. Hayne spoke for the past, for slavery was of the past. Webster's argument embodied all the mighty evolution of national life, both actual and potential. He spoke for the future, for nationality was of the future. To casual observers this seemed a repetition of the old struggle between nationality and state sovereignty, but was fundamentally a hand-to-hand combat between nationality and slavery. The next move was to commit Jackson to the new movement by surrounding him with a nullification atmosphere at the Jefferson banquet; but his volunteer toast, "The federal Union, it must be

[1] This statement was generally accepted then, and is often believed true now; but it is easy to see that slavery alone put the South in a position where it could not profit by the national policy of protection. Soil, climate, and natural products alone would not have created dissimilar and conflicting interests. The proof of this is found in the development of diversified industries in the South to-day.

preserved," was the end of their hopes. Disappointed in Jackson, Calhoun issued "An Appeal to the People of South Carolina," in July, 1831, in which he restated, in stronger terms and with more elaboration than in the "Exposition," the doctrines of nullification. In and out of congress it was felt that a crisis could be avoided only by a reduction of the tariff.

The legislature of South Carolina called a state convention, and in November of 1832 the famous ordinance was passed nullifying the tariffs of 1828 and 1832. Provisions were made for executing the decree by force, if necessary. Jackson promptly issued his great proclamation demolishing the doctrine of nullification, and declaring his resolution to enforce the laws of the nation. Clay's compromise tariff probably prevented a collision between the state and national forces. The great bulk of the nation, irrespective of party, applauded the president. Nullification as a peaceful remedy was discredited. Nationality was strengthened in Jackson's party, especially in the North and West. In the midst of the noise and excitement, few persons saw that the compromise did not go to the root of the matter, that slavery, the real cause of the trouble, was still operative, and was to produce collisions until the final struggle should break out in the Civil War.

**Meaning of the Movement for Texas.** This is the old question in a new form: How can slavery escape its own ills? There are two reasons why it must have Texas. First, the wear and tear of the system in the older states made new lands necessary. Second, the South needed more votes in the Senate, especially since the anti-slavery movement was growing. Slaveholders emigrated to Texas for one or both of these reasons. The Americans in Texas refused to submit to the

aggressions of Mexico, raised the standard of revolt, issued a declaration of independence, and defeated the Mexicans.[1] Mexico refused to ratify Texan independence which Sam Houston wrung from Santa Anna at San Jacinto in 1835. A government was organized and application made for admission to the United States. Jackson and the South favored the application, but feared northern sentiment. Petitions from the North poured in on congress against annexation. The South tried to make it a national question by arguing for an extension of the national domain; calling for its "reannexation," asserting it was once a part of the Louisiana purchase and needlessly given up; appealing against England, which was represented as intriguing with the new republic.

In spite of all these reasons, opposition at the North steadily grew, and forced the postponement of annexation during the administration of Van Buren and the greater part of Tyler's. When annexation did come in 1845, the two sections were gradually becoming conscious of a growing contrariety of interests. From this time on, if not from an earlier date, every question of importance was viewed by the American people in its relation to slavery. The process of sectionalization had begun in earnest.

### The Growth of Sectionalization

**The Process Already Begun.** The beginnings of new movements frequently find their opportunity at the point of triumph of older movements. In the decade from 1830 to 1840, democracy and nationality triumphed together. While these two forces were reveling in their mutual victory, sectionalization was already raising its head.

[1] The author does not enumerate all the causes of the Texan revolution.

We have already discovered that the active and aggressive cause of this movement was an inherent weakness in slavery itself; that an attempt to overcome this led to the political and economic conflicts over the admission of Missouri, the nullification of the tariff, and the annexation of Texas.

The above contest gave opportunity to the opponents of slavery on moral and religious grounds. This old enemy, slavery affected to despise, but it was the most dangerous of all, because not influenced by political considerations. The proof that both sections were becoming conscious of increasing differences of interests and ideas is found in the following points:

1. It is revealed in speeches of leading men. John Quincy Adams on annexation: "Your trial is approaching. The spirit of freedom and the spirit of slavery are drawing together for a deadly conflict of arms. . . . Young men of Boston, burnish up your armor and prepare for the conflict." Jackson pronounced this "a direct appeal to arms" to oppose the annexation of Texas. Several, in speaking on the subject, said: "To increase the slaveholding power is to subvert the Constitution: to give a fearful preponderance which may, and probably will, be speedily followed by demands to which the democratic free-labor states cannot yield, and the denial of which will be made the ground of secession, nullification, and disunion." The *South Carolinian* in 1844 said: "This question absorbs all others. . . . Whigs and Democrats drop all their old party differences and unite on it like brothers . . . This is a question not of *party*, but of *country*, and to the South one of absolute *self-preservation*. . . . The only hope of the South is in herself." A call for a convention of the friends of annexation was issued. Their motto

was: "Texas with, or Texas without, the Union." The idea of a convention of slave states was born, but did not materialize.

2. The movement toward sectionalization is seen again in the rapid rise at the North of anti-slavery sentiment, which, in its aggressive beginning, ran parallel to the attempt of the South to beat down the tariff, and maintain its supremacy in the Senate by annexing Texas. Lundy, with his *Genius of Universal Emancipation*, and Garrison, with his *Liberator*, had prepared the way for the organization of the enemies of slavery into the American Anti-Slavery Society (1833). This organization, with an increasing number of state societies, demanded the abolition of slavery. It poured petitions into congress against the slave-trade, slavery in the District of Columbia, and the annexation of Texas. The success of annexation led to a rapid decline of the anti-slavery opposition based on political consideration.

3. The progress of this anti-national process is found in the congressional battle over the right of petition. From Washington's administration, the slaveholders showed much sensitiveness over petitions relating to slavery. Now they gave an enormous impulse to the anti-slavery cause by refusing any sort of hearing to such appeals. The increase of anti-slavery petitions led to the passage of the gag resolutions as a means of suppressing them; but the rising tide of opposition, led by John Quincy Adams, finally beat down this barrier in 1844. Not only did the North hate slavery more for its willingness to override the most sacred constitutional rights, but also because it exhibited almost unbearable intolerance toward the old hero who waged the battle against its aggression.

4. In 1840 the Liberty party was born, and cast nearly seven thousand votes for abolition. In 1844 its vote ran up to over sixty thousand, being joined this year by several thousand anti-slavery Whigs. The feeling which led them in New York to ignore party ties and vote against Henry Clay is most significant indeed.

5. In no sphere of activity was the tendency toward denationalization stronger than in the church. One cause of the dissensions among the Presbyterians in 1838 was the growing divergence of opinion on slavery. A battle over slavery was fought in the Methodist Church, resulting in its dismemberment in 1844. Men, both North and South, saw that this portended the dissolution of the Union. In this same period the Baptist Church was also rent by the slavery question. Thus were the interests and the feelings of the two sections moving away from each other, and making it more impossible each year for the people to act as a nation on questions immediately, or even remotely, connected with slavery.

**Motive and Results of the Mexican War.** Slavery had annexed Texas, but was not satisfied; and was not to stop short of the Pacific Ocean. Two things opened the way: 1. Several million dollars of claims against Mexico and a disputed boundary line. 2. The diplomatic correspondence and the conduct of the governmental agents of the United States show a determination to have California by peace or war. The order which sent American troops into the disputed territory furnishes additional proof of this, and every victory of the American arms, from Palo Alto to Scott's triumphal entry into the Mexican capital, meant, in the minds of the promoters of the war, more slave territory.

Many people supported the war mainly from patriotic

or military ardor, some because they believed in the doctrine of "manifest destiny" and gave little heed to the outcome. However, the more thoughtful saw the trend of things during its progress. When the president asked, in 1846, for two million dollars to aid in making peace, eyes were opened, and both Whigs and Democrats at the North supported the Wilmot Proviso. Almost without regard to party this measure was supported or opposed, and marks an important step in denationalization. While Calhoun opposed the war as dangerous to slavery, now he fought the Proviso with all the logic of his powerful mind. He developed before the Senate the doctrine that congress could make no law impairing the right of a citizen to carry his property into the territories. This was a new and aggressive position, and, if supported by the South, would produce a solid North. The Wilmot Proviso was defeated by a small majority by those who feared a dissolution of the Union, and those who feared no territory at all would be obtained.

The slaveholders began to say that no friend of the Wilmot Proviso could ever be president,[1] while even the northern Democrats, particularly in New York, under the name of Barnburners, began to break away from their southern brethren. This defection was made formidable in 1848, when nearly all anti-slavery factions united on Martin Van Buren under the name of Free Soil party. They asserted it to be the power and duty of congress to protect the territories from slavery. This was embodied in their platform—the principle which was to produce a more complete sectionalization of parties than anything yet seen. On this principle, when the time came, the Republican Party stood firm, saw the

[1] A Wilmot Proviso man was not elected till 1860.

Democratic Party go to pieces in opposing it, and elected Lincoln President. Calhoun denied what the Free Soil Party demanded. On the part of the North, this was a reassertion of the doctrine of the Ordinance of 1787 touching slavery, the sentiment contained in legislative instructions against the admission of Missouri as a slave state, and the principle of the Wilmot Proviso. It is significant that both of the old parties refused to commit themselves on this point. The Democrats nominated a northern man, General Cass, and the Whigs a southern man and slaveholder, General Taylor; and both ignored slavery as far as possible. This only proves that each section feared the defection of the other. In spite of this care, Democratic states, like South Carolina, threw their votes for the slaveholding Whig rather than for the non-slaveholding Democrat; Whig Ohio gave over sixteen thousand majority for the Democratic non-slaveholder, besides over thirty-five thousand votes to the Free Soil party. The Free Soil vote in the same time had gained nearly three hundred per cent.

**How the Discovery of Gold in California Aided in Sectionalizing the Nation.** The treaty with Mexico was hardly made before gold was discovered in California. As the news spread over the nation large numbers started for the new land. They forsook all occupations and went by all routes: over the mountains, across the Isthmus, and around the Cape. In 1849 this hardy population organized for statehood. A free-state constitution was adopted by the convention without a dissenting vote, and it was ratified by a vast majority of the people. The people of the territory had put the substance of the Wilmot Proviso into their constitution. Thus, by action of the settlers themselves, slavery was

deprived of the richest fruit of the war. Why did freedom win in the territory acquired for aid by its rival? Slavery had a scanty white population, and was tied to the soil. It had no emigrants to spare, and if it had, they must have carried slaves as well as themselves. Therefore, California was lost by slavery itself. The same old cause forced and lost the battle as in the days of the constitutional convention, the struggle for Missouri, and in the fight over the tariff and nullification. This experience ought to have convinced Calhoun that congressional non-intervention would not save slavery in the territories.

Great southern Whigs like Stephens and Toombs began now to coöperate with slaveholding Democrats in congress. Eight southern Whigs deserted the caucus of their party because it refused to resolve against legislation on the subject of slavery. During the three weeks' contest over the Speakership, it was no unusual thing for southern congressmen to declare that the adoption of the Wilmot Proviso, or the abolition of slavery in the District, would be a sufficient cause of disunion. The fear of this caused the North to weaken, and a slaveholder was elected Speaker by a few votes.

**The Compromise of 1850.** This event, as an effect, embodies the results flowing from the annexation of Texas and the Mexican war. As a phase of public sentiment it is the first conscious crisis in the process of sectionalization. Had not the conviction that the Union was in danger been deeply grounded, no such compromise would have been possible.

The champions of the old order of things were met by leaders of a new *régime*. Clay and Webster stood for the Union. Clay's spirit and zeal prove the depth of his conviction that the Union was in danger from

both northern and southern radicals. Webster was also powerfully impelled by the same conviction. Whether his severer strictures upon anti-slavery agitators than upon pro-slavery radicals were due to his desire to be president rather than to strengthen the Union is a disputed question. To the old leaders, the Union had been almost everything, and its destruction seemed to threaten chaos. The speeches of these two men attracted wide-spread attention, and called hundreds to Washington to hear them. The significance of Calhoun's speech was in the emphasis placed upon equal political power between the two sections as the condition upon which the South could remain in the Union. This was a condition impossible of fulfillment. First, because the North would not agree to it. Second, because it proposed to make a minority equal to a majority. Slavery made the South a minority section; in respect to population, industry, education, and all that constitutes progressive civilization, slavery forced the South into a position of increasing inferiority. Every decade would have revealed the growing injustice of such a plan of peace.

In these debates appeared the champions of a new cause. Here men like Seward and Chase, having broken from the traditions of the old parties on slavery, spoke for freedom and the future. Here it was that the former announced the "higher law," which constituted his most significant utterance. He held that compromises would avail nothing. Seward was the representative of an increasing number of northern Whigs; hence the alarm of the South at the doctrines announced in his speech. This alarm was deepened by the way Webster was berated in New England for his part in the great debate.

The passage of the leading measures of the compromise seemed to allay agitation for a time. "Union" meetings were held in various parts of the nation, at which both Whigs and Democrats appeared to promote fraternal relations between the sections. The rising sentiment in the South in favor of secession subsided somewhat. A convention of states was held in Nashville in June, 1850, but few representatives were present and little unanimity found. It met again in November and asserted the right of secession, but this represented only radical southern opinion.

Both of the old parties tried hard to support the compromise as a "finality." Resolutions in caucus and before congress served rather to divide the Whig party. In state conventions the compromise was generally supported, and in both the great national conventions of 1852 it received renewed pledges of fidelity. But it was felt that the Whigs were less in earnest than the Democrats; many southern Whigs, therefore, supported their old opponents. The Free Soil vote of 1852 was greatly reduced as compared with 1848, but was more than double that of 1844.

**The Kansas-Nebraska Bill.** The overwhelming success of the Democrats still added to the delusion that the great compromise was a finality; but the South could not forget its loss of California nor the North forgive the fugitive-slave law. The execution of this law exasperated the anti-slavery men, and led states to pass laws which greatly limited its efficiency. This conduct was indefensible in a legal sense, and was practical nullification. Only moral ground could be urged in its defense. The compromise of 1850 applied the principle of popular sovereignty to the territories of New Mexico and Utah.

Early in 1854 Senator Douglas introduced a bill embodying this idea in the organization of the territory now included in Kansas and Nebraska. Not much opposition to the application of non-intervention in 1850 was made by either section, but the repeal of the Missouri Compromise now raised a storm in the North which raged till swallowed up by war. Southern Whigs, as well as Democrats, supported the bill, while half the Northern Democrats in the House joined the majority of northern Whigs in opposition. The bill's majority was only thirteen,—a most significant vote, considering the great majority held by the administration.

The dissolution of parties outside of congress went on more rapidly than in congress. In the extreme slave states the Whig party rapidly disappeared, while in the North anti-slavery Whigs and Democrats coalesced in opposition to the aggressions of slavery. It seemed to the North that slavery, having failed to get possession of California, was making a flank movement to possess all remaining territory. To the South it appeared entirely consistent to apply the principles of non-intervention to all territories alike. Both saw that possession of Kansas was a question of numbers, but they did not at first see that the North alone could win; it had the white population to spare. The South was weakened by a sparse population, and only the slave-holders with their slaves could make Kansas a slave state. The Emigrant Aid Society was an impossible organization for the South. Thus handicapped by the system she would save, her leaders were compelled to resort to force in setting up a government. The free-state settlers retaliated and civil war broke out.

One of the immediate results of the new agitation was the formation of the Republican party. It adopted the

principles and absorbed the membership of the Free Soil party; but the largest contingent was furnished by the northern Whigs whose party was practically disbanded. The large accessions from the old parties added that respectability which comes from numbers and experienced leadership. The masses of the voters made the new party more popular in its tendency than had been the Whigs. The new party cast more than a million three hundred thousand votes two years later (1856), after the repeal of the Missouri Compromise. It would probably have won had the Know Nothing party been out of the way with its remnant of timid Whigs. The fact of striking significance in the vote is that fewer than twelve hundred ballots were cast in the slave states for Frémont, and these only in the border states. Again, the Democratic party lost all the northern states except New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Indiana, and Illinois, and its total majority in these four states were several thousand less than the total vote of the American party. When this party disappears, will not its vote leave the Democrats sectionalized as far as majorities are concerned?

**The Dred Scott Decision.** This rising tide of anti-slavery sentiment was now threatening to overflow all bounds. All departments of the government, except the judiciary, had been called in and had failed to find the remedy. Would not the people's profound regard for the purity and dignity of the national judiciary lead them to obey its behests on the slavery question? Would it not be risking too much to drag this noble tribunal into the mad swirl of sectional politics? In 1857 the Supreme Court handed down the "Dred Scott Decision" to the effect that slavery could not be excluded from the territories. The significance of this decision

lies in several points: 1. The apparent purpose of the slave power to fasten slavery on Kansas by this means. 2. Its complete nullification of the doctrine of popular sovereignty. 3. Denial of the constitutionality of the Free Soil principles of the Republican party. 4. Its utter denial of the right of slaves to be considered even as citizens in the meaning of the Constitution.

**The Lincoln-Douglas Debates.** In the course of events, both parties in Kansas framed constitutions, set up governments, and applied for admission into the Union. The administration favored the pro-slavery constitution. This violated the principle of "popular sovereignty" and Douglas joined the anti-slavery men in opposing the admission of Kansas with a slave constitution. This was a further breach in the northern Democracy.

In 1858 occurred the Lincoln-Douglas debates. The term of Senator Douglas of Illinois was about to expire. He was the idol of the northern Democrats, and was admired by many Republicans for his stand against forcing a pro-slavery constitution upon Kansas. The Republicans of Illinois nominated Abraham Lincoln as their candidate. Before the nominating convention Lincoln made his famous house-divided-against-itself speech. Douglas immediately attacked this speech with great spirit. Lincoln challenged him to public debate before the people of Illinois. Seven joint debates were arranged. It was a battle royal, and attracted general attention throughout the United States. Only one question was discussed,— slavery. On the first day Douglas set a trap to prove Lincoln an abolitionist; it consisted of a set of questions so worded that each practically answered itself. Lincoln broke the force of the questions by his skillful answers, and in turn propounded a set of questions which contained two pitfalls, into

one of which Douglas must fall or refuse to answer the questions; in case he refused, he would fall into both: "Can the people of a United States territory, in any lawful way, against the wish of any citizen of the United States, exclude slavery from its limits prior to the formation of a state constitution?" Douglas replied, "It matters not what way the Supreme Court may hereafter decide as to the abstract question whether slavery may or may not go into a territory under the Constitution; the people have the lawful means to introduce it or exclude it as they please." This answer made Douglas senator again, but lost him the presidency, as such doctrine was now wormwood and gall to the South. However, had he answered the question in another way, he would doubtless have lost the support of the bulk of Northern Democrats. Answered either way it was almost certain to split the Democratic party if Douglas became a candidate for the presidency. From now on the differences between the northern and southern Democracy were irreconcilable. Sectionalization of political feeling in the South rapidly hastened to completion.

**Other Symptoms of the Triumph of Sectionalization.** From the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska bill the gulf rapidly widened. The following hastened and at the same time signified this fact: 1. One or more expeditions between 1850 and 1860 were organized against Cuba, Mexico, and Central America, to obtain more slave soil. These expeditions were encouraged by the Ostend "manifesto," which recommended either the purchase or the conquest of Cuba. 2. Another symptom was the growing conviction that the conflict between the North and the South was irrepressible. This idea was formulated by Lincoln in his famous Springfield speech, June, 1858, and by Seward in his celebrated Rochester speech in

October of the same year.[1] The universal attention given these speeches proves that they accurately diagnosed the situation. 3. The most startling of the current symptoms was the John Brown raid. The southern people fully believed that the majority of the North sympathized with or aided the expedition. Nothing proves so completely the total misunderstanding between the two sections. 4. Among the many signs of the rapid sectionalization of interests and sentiments may be counted the frequent conventions in the South for the discussion of its peculiar interests. Such meetings were held at Knoxville, Montgomery, Vicksburg, and at other places. The reopening of the foreign slave-trade was fully discussed in these meetings and carried in the affirmative. The more visionary papers of the South saw in this, not only the recovery of the states lost, but the universal sway of slavery in the nation.

**The Meaning of the Charleston Convention.** In 1860 the Democrats met in Charleston to nominate a candidate for the presidency. Before the meeting convened it was becoming evident that the northern delegates to the convention were determined to stand by Douglas, while the southern delegates were just as determined to

[1] Lincoln's statement: "'A house divided against itself cannot stand.' I believe this government cannot endure permanently half slave and half free. I do not expect the Union to be dissolved, I do not expect the house to fall, but I do expect it will cease to be divided. It will become all one thing or all the other. Either the opponents of slavery will arrest the further spread of it and place it where the public mind shall rest in the belief that it is in the course of ultimate extinction, or its advocates will push it forward till it shall become alike lawful in all the states, old as well as new, North as well as South."

Seward's statement: "They who think that it is accidental, unnecessary, the work of interested or fanatical agitators, and therefore ephemeral, mistake the case altogether. It is an irrepressible conflict between opposing and enduring forces, and it means that the United States must and will, sooner or later, become either entirely a slave-holding nation or entirely a free-labor nation."

repudiate him. This situation was largely the result of the Lincoln-Douglas debates. Not only the man but his principles had become dangerous to slavery. Originally slavery had hailed non-intervention and popular sovereignty with every manifestation of approval. Douglas and his platform were of no more service to slavery than were Lincoln and his Free Soil platform. But the real reason is found, not in Douglas and his platform, but in the defects of slavery itself.

The southern delegates demanded that the convention declare that neither congress nor the territorial legislature has the right to abolish slavery in the territories, and that it is the duty of the federal government to protect the rights of person and property wherever its jurisdiction extends. This was a blow aimed at Douglas and his northern supporters. Holding a majority, the Douglas delegates rejected the demands of the South; the southern delegates withdrew and organized a rival convention, which subsequently nominated Breckenridge for president.

Douglas's supporters called a new convention and nominated their favorite. The Republicans named Lincoln; the Constitutional Union party, Bell. The result was the defeat of Douglas and the election of Lincoln. The popular vote shows how completely the Union was sectionalized. Out of nearly two million votes, the Republicans received a few more than twenty-five thousand from the border slave states. Douglas, likewise, out of nearly a million three hundred thousand, received about one hundred sixty thousand votes from the slave states. The North cast less than one hundred thousand for Breckenridge and about eighty thousand for Bell, most of whose vote was southern.

One consequence of the conduct of the Charleston

convention and of the result of the campaign remains to be considered. Douglas fought out the campaign till the "October states" showed the certainty of Lincoln's election. He canceled his dates and turned southward. On the stump, in private, and at every opportunity he declared for the Union. While southern states were seceding, southern congressmen hurling defiance at the Union in parting speeches, Douglas stood boldly for the Union, and answered seceding congressmen in language they could not misunderstand. At Lincoln's inauguration he stood near and commended the fearless, though gentle, words of his late opponent. At the inauguration ball he escorted Mrs. Lincoln in the presence of the capital's élite, then largely southern. When Lincoln's call to arms went forth, there accompanied it the announcement of Douglas's enthusiastic support. This was a summons to the million northern voters who had just followed him to political defeat. Their time had come. On April 25, 1861, occurred a remarkable scene in the capital of Illinois. The members of a Republican legislature, once his enemies, were now, in the home of Abraham Lincoln, giving Stephen A. Douglas a most enthusiastic ovation, and were hanging on his words as if he were a political prophet after their own heart. In a little more than a week the country was startled by the news of his death. But along with this went the description of the deathbed scene, in which the dying patriot appealed to his sons to be true to the Constitution and the Union. This was his final summons to his followers to respond to their country's call. How the War-Democrats kept this last appeal history tells. His later days had been inspired by his love of the Union. Thus again did slavery raise up the agents of its own destruction.

**The Significance of Secession.** The secession conventions of the southern states were the sign, looking backward, that sectionalization was practically complete; that the interests and feelings of the North endangered the existence of slavery. Looking forward, they signified the determination of slavery to save itself outside of the Union. Secession was not primarily for the purpose of vindicating the principle of state sovereignty. It is true that the act of secession sought its defense in this doctrine; the southern leaders often put it forward with much earnestness, and doubtless sincerely believed that the sovereignty of the state provided for legal separation. No doubt many people thought the primary purpose of the movement was the defense of the old Jeffersonian doctrine. This motive was kept to the front by the method of secession. Frequently the governor summoned the legislature in extra session. Usually this body, after providing means for the defense of the state, called a convention of the people which should pass upon the subject of secession. Thus secession was generally decreed by a body of people supposed to possess the attribute of sovereignty. The reason for the prominence given to state sovereignty is partly explained by the fact that in some states many non-slaveholders were unwilling to promote the interests of slavery and yet were devoted to state sovereignty. Looking forward to the meaning of secession as seen in its consequences, we see that it involved war. While the South was contemplating separation, its leaders were preparing for war. They may have convinced themselves and their people that war would not follow, yet they fearlessly proceeded with their plans. The national life developed between 1789 and 1860 had become so complex and so interdependent that it touched almost every human interest.

Although sectionalization was so complete, yet when this sought to express itself in overt acts, it was found impossible to do so without a collision of interests.

How hard the North tried to save the Union without a collision of arms may be partly seen in the new compromises offered to slavery. The work of both houses of congress during the winter of 1860 and 1861 was mainly devoted to seeing how far the North would make concession. The proof that some Republicans were willing to make concessions in conflict with their platform is found in the provisions of the Crittenden Compromise, in the resolutions of the Committee of Thirty-three, in the work of the Peace convention, and in the opening of the territories without restrictions upon slavery. It was all in vain.

## The Destruction of Slavery and the Triumph of the Nation

**Significance of Slavery's Appeal to Arms.** How different was the progress of the struggle between nationality and democracy from the progress of the conflict between nationality and slavery! In the former case, the hostile forces conquered each other and entered into friendly and helpful coöperation, while in the latter they have grown into irreconcilable and deadly enemies.

Was the South conscious of resting her hope of success on the ability of slavery to cope successfully with freedom? In the first place, war is, to some extent, a question of numbers. Where people are of the same race and nation, numbers are a decisive factor. Slavery kept population sparse by establishing conditions unfavorable to dense white population. We saw the stream of European immigration deflected from the South. Besides, there was a constant movement of non-slaveholders to the free

states. In 1850 three times as many native southerners were living in the North as native northerners living in the South. Again, it was impossible to carry all the slave states into secession. The moral support of Delaware, Maryland, West Virginia, Kentucky, and Missouri were against slavery. Besides, there were thousands of hardy men in the mountains of the seceding states whose sympathy and interest were with the Union. To them slavery had been an unmitigated curse. In all these respects slavery had handicapped itself.

In respect to other resources, the institution had stood in its own way. It had very few factories for either clothes or guns, or any of the enginery of war. The banking capital of the North in 1860 was several times that of the seceding states. Slavery placed its main reliance for credit upon cotton, whose value was lessened by the fact that it had to leave the South before the South could profit by it. An efficient blockade greatly reduced its value.

The South had one real advantage over the North. The slave remained at home and cared for the soldier's family and produced the food supply of the army. This enabled the Confederacy to utilize its white population to an extent impossible at the North. This fact furnished, later in the war, an argument for emancipation. At every point the system of slavery had been preparing for its own defeat, from Jamestown to Appomattox.

**The Revival of Nationality in the North.** The signal for this was the attack upon Fort Sumter. A wave of loyalty, sweeping over the North, broke down all differences; there was but one resolution: a determination to save the Union. The causes of this reaction were several: 1. The North had gone down on its knees to slavery in the winter and spring of 1861, offering terms of peace. 2. The new administration entered on no

aggressive measures, although military preparation was well under way in the South on March 4, 1861. 3. Seizure of national property by seceding states, and the attack upon Fort Sumter, thus making the South the aggressor. 4. The general conviction that many southern leaders were engaged in secession while holding high office in the service of the federal government.

The administration aimed to husband this revival. The majority of northern people were not abolitionists and had no desire to interfere with slavery in the states. For this reason the war on the side of the North had for its supreme aim the preservation of the Union. This is the one principle by which Lincoln's conduct of the great struggle may be interpreted at every point. To this end armies were organized and campaigns planned. This was the meaning of his border-state policy, and even when emancipation came, this was the test he applied to it. His wisdom in this showed how thoroughly the president understood his constituency.

**How the Slavery Question Forced its Way to the Front.** Whatever might be the opinion or prejudice of the North regarding slavery, one thing was certain: slavery was bound to compel consideration. The president might ignore it in his planning, and congress might resolve not to interfere with it; yet it was the great cause of the war.

As soon as the Union armies moved into slave territory, the negroes sought it for protection. What shall be done with them? Shall they be freed, returned to slavery, confiscated, or let alone? General Butler declared them "contraband of war," other generals returned them to their masters; some, like Frémont, liberated them. The president tried to modify the conduct of these generals so as to preserve harmony in the war party.

Congress early passed a resolution that the only purpose

of the government in the war was to suppress rebellion and preserve the Union. But events were moving rapidly. The South used the slave in the army. He did the menial service of the camp, worked on fortifications, and in other respects enabled the southern soldier always to be at the front, thus giving strength to the Confederate Army. Congress could not ignore this, and such negroes were declared free. There was some opposition from Democrats and border-state men. They feared the example and wanted slavery left entirely alone.

As the war constantly grew heavier congress was less kindly disposed toward slavery, and emancipated the slaves in the District of Columbia, but compensated their masters. The border-state men again opposed, but were defeated. The anti-slavery spirit gradually rose till in August, 1862, congress confiscated the property of Confederates. This was practically emancipation for the slaves of men in war. The need of some such law to weaken the power of the South was demonstrated by a double sortie from the South; Lee entered Maryland and Bragg, Kentucky, in 1862.

While congress was thus striking somewhat boldly at the real cause of the struggle, President Lincoln was making more cautious movements in the same direction. Early in 1862 he suggested that the government ought to coöperate, by compensation, with any state which might adopt gradual emancipation. He saw great gain to the Union, for, if once adopted by any state, the hope of that state's joining the Confederacy was gone. The matter of gradual and compensated emancipation was put before the border-state congressmen, but they gave it no support, and he was left, in the progress of war, to face the problem of general and uncompensated emancipation. Lincoln's great wisdom was in discovering just

the point at which public sentiment would justify emancipation. Nothing could move the president from his determination to wait until the country was ready for the great decree. It is an interesting commentary on the progress of history that the people had to be driven by the sore distresses of war before the slave could be freed. Mourning had to come into thousands of northern homes before the people were willing to save the Union by removing the only cause of its disruption. McClellan's great campaign against Richmond had failed; the second battle of Bull Run was fought and lost; Lee had invaded the frightened North. Harper's Ferry had surrendered, and the great battle of Antietam had taken place. In the West, matters had gone more favorably for the Union. Grant had captured Henry and Donelson, fought the bloody battle of Shiloh, taken Corinth, and was coöperating with the victor of New Orleans for the complete opening of the Mississippi. But during the summer and early September, General Bragg, at the head of an enthusiastic army, marched out of Tennessee into Kentucky and made for Louisville. Buell won the race by a few hours only. The excitement in the North was intense, and the masses began to appreciate more keenly the stupendous problem of saving the Union.

During these first two years of war, England and France had been anything but friendly. They acknowledged the insurgents as belligerents. This gave the South a great moral advantage, but impressed the North as an action only too gladly taken. This impression was greatly strengthened by the warlike attitude of Great Britain over the Trent affair. The South felt that England and France could hardly afford to have their supply of American cotton cut off by war. This seemed to justify the South in expecting some kind of intervention

from them. There was much talk of friendly intervention, and after McClellan's failure in the Peninsular campaign, this project revived; France, England, and Russia held an unsuccessful correspondence on the subject.

Perhaps the greatest cause of northern irritation toward England, was the construction of Confederate blockade runners and privateers in the shipyards of Great Britain. Early in 1862, the minister to England protested against the construction of war vessels. The conduct of the British government was entirely unsatisfactory to the federal government, and did much to increase the danger of foreign war.

The loyal people were bearing, at this time an immense financial burden. When the great proclamation was issued, the internal revenue tax was a million a day. When we add to this the vast sum raised by tariff duties, the expenditures of states, the contributions of charitable organizations and of private persons, some idea can be formed of the enormous drain upon material resources of the country. All these burdens, and even more, were necessary to bring the American people to consent to the destruction of slavery.

**The Significance of the Proclamation of Emancipation.** This is partly revealed in the preceding discussions. Its significance, as discovered in succeeding events, is now to be noted. First, the act completed the growing separation between the administration and certain elements in the North who came to be known as peace men. From now on, they began to organize to secure peace without regard to the means. Later, they developed a secret organization known as the Sons of Liberty, or Knights of the Golden Circle. Many conservative people drew away from the administration and supported the Democratic party in the fall elections of 1862. While the

result, so nearly disastrous to the administration,[1] was not entirely due to the proclamation, yet it furnished the "stock" arguments of the campaign. An "abolition war," "negro equality," "negro emigration to the North" with its disastrous effects on the white laborer, "a government for white men," were some of the catch phrases that made opposition votes rapidly in the border free states. There was just enough in the war policy to give the color of truth to such statements.

A second significance is found in the fact that the proclamation divided the North and unified the South. All classes of southern whites despised the free negro. The poor whites felt now that the negro would likely rise in the scale of importance if the North should win. If a great English statesman could look upon it as an act of vengeance, we can hardly expect the slaveholders to characterize the act in gentler terms. One great cause of exasperation was the plan to employ the slaves as soldiers.

The proclamation, in a third instance, almost completely removed the danger of foreign intervention. The government of England did not dare face its own people, to say nothing of the rest of the world, with a proposition to favor slavery.

In addition, the emancipation of the negro introduced new problems. The burden of war was so great that men hardly halted to consider the grave questions which were thus forced upon the nation. From many points of view it was a fearful question, considering their condition.

Finally, the emancipation of the slave was the beginning of the end of the struggle between slavery and nationality. This removed the last important obstacle to our becoming a great nation such as the fathers of the republic little

[1] New York, Pennsylvania, Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois went Democratic, leaving only a majority of about twenty in the House. New England and the border slave states saved the Union.

imagined. When the Union is restored, only the effects of slavery will stand in the way of a new national spirit.

**Leading Military Events Making Good the Proclamation of Emancipation and the Restoration of the Nation.** The one common content of the events of the war is their bearing on the restoration of the Union. Up to the proclamation, all events tended more or less unconsciously to force slavery into the contest, while many persons strove consciously to eliminate it. After the proclamation all events carry, as a part of their content, the fortunes of both slavery and the Union. The following events may be regarded as directly affecting this double result, without an understanding of which the result is not intelligible.

1. The campaign for the capture of Vicksburg and the opening of the Mississippi. This occupied a portion of 1862 and the first half of 1863. The result severed Arkansas and Texas from the rest of the Confederacy, in addition to the loss of a large army and vast military stores. The Mississippi states now had direct communication with the Atlantic seaboard.

2. While Grant was capturing Vicksburg, Buell and Rosecrans were driving Bragg out of Kentucky back into the mountains of Tennessee. The leading battles were Perryville and Stone River. The moral effect was depressing to the South.

3. Just as Grant was receiving the surrender of Vicksburg, and Rosecrans was pushing Bragg out of Tennessee, General Meade checked the tide of Confederate invasion at Gettysburg. This was the first great victory in the East since Antietam. While the victory at Gettysburg was incomplete, it demonstrated to the South that the insurgents would receive no substantial aid from the border states. Peace men, both North and South, who

tried to secure a cessation of hostilities on terms less than the restoration of the Union were discouraged.

4. The tide of Union victory was somewhat checked in September, 1863, when Bragg so nearly annihilated Rosecrans at Chickamauga, and cooped up his army in Chattanooga. The siege was raised by aid from the victors at Gettysburg and Vicksburg. The Confederate army was defeated in those brilliant charges up Lookout Mountain and on Missionary Ridge.

5. When General Grant went East, he put General Sherman in command of the great army in the West. By July, 1864, Johnston, after a series of most brilliant retreats, was driven into Atlanta. Hood succeeded him, and had his army defeated. Hood now turned North, and was defeated in December by Thomas at Franklin. His army never rallied from the blow. In the meantime, Sherman was making his famous march to the sea. Little opposed, Savannah, Charleston, and other places fell. On his return, Johnston, who had been restored to command, was driven back into North Carolina. This march kept reënforcements from Lee at Richmond, and aided the inevitable collapse of the Confederacy.

6. Early in 1864, General Grant was placed in command of all the armies of the Union. With Meade and the army of the Potomac, he began a campaign which ended only at Appomattox, April, 1865. In this series of battles, Lee's army simply battered itself to pieces. At no point in the war was the nakedness of slavery so apparent as in these last days. The vast strength of the Union forces, their splendid equipment in arms, food, and clothing, were arguments in favor of freedom and against slavery more powerful than were ever set forth by the logic of statesmen. With an energy hardly paralleled in history, the South had concentrated her forces, political and

military, and kept up the movement till her very life was burned out.

**Other Events from the Proclamation to the Close of the War.** War can never be an end in itself. Hence it must aim at political or other ends. In a great struggle like the Civil War, the relation between military and political events is always interactive. The following influenced the war itself, and were in turn modified by it:

1. It has already been shown how the financial burdens of the war argued for the abolition of slavery. The establishment of the national banking system was the most important of the later financial measures. It was strongly opposed, but passed early in the spring of 1863, and gave greater confidence in the financial strength of the country.

2. The critical political event of this part of the struggle was the presidential election of 1864. The Confederacy hoped for the defeat of Lincoln. It looked for a split in the Republican party. There was much dissatisfaction with the administration's conduct of the war. The abolitionists had not forgiven Lincoln for delaying emancipation till the country was ready for the measure. The radical leaders were impatient with his conservatism. Many disappointed office-seekers joined the opposition, which tended to concentrate upon Secretary Chase. Ohio early declared for Lincoln, and the Secretary withdrew from the field. The malcontents met in convention at Cleveland, May, 1864, and nominated General Frémont. The attitude of the Democrats and the hopelessness of success led him to withdraw. In proportion as the politicians opposed Lincoln, the people rallied to his support. From all parts of the Union came an emphatic demand for his renomination, which took place at Baltimore and

on a platform that strongly endorsed his administration, declared against making compromises with the Confederacy, and in favor of an amendment abolishing slavery. The Peace Democrats captured their party in the Chicago convention and declared the war a failure, called for a convention of states to settle the difficulties between the Confederacy and the Union, and denounced the president for trampling on the Constitution and the rights of the people. General McClellan was nominated, but in his letter of acceptance he repudiated parts of the platform. The rapid and successful progress of war made a peace platform and a war candidate seem ridiculously absurd. The election gave Lincoln an overwhelming popular and electoral vote; all the states voting, except three, went for Lincoln,—a sufficiently emphatic endorsement of his war on slavery.

**Digging Slavery up by the Roots.** The proposition of the Confederacy in the last months of the war to employ negroes as soldiers, not only revealed the utter exhaustion of the South, but demonstrated their loss of faith in the possibility of saving the institution. It is interesting and significant that Lee offered to make no stipulations with Grant about slavery when arranging terms at Appomattox. Although slavery was passing away by the logic of events, yet its very roots must be pulled up. This was accomplished by amending the Constitution.

President Lincoln had, by an exercise of the "war power," struck a deadly blow at slavery; but it was felt that the result, to be a finality, must be stamped upon the Constitution itself. In February, 1865, congress sent the thirteenth amendment to the people. It was ratified and officially proclaimed by December 18. This amendment put the principle of the anti-slavery clause of the Ordinance of 1787 and the Wilmot Proviso into the

Constitution. While most of the states of the Confederacy accepted this amendment, they proceeded to legislate in a way which apprised the North of a determination to hold the negroes in a sort of slavery.

When the congress, elected in 1864, met in 1865, the Republican majority was furious over the so-called attempts to nullify the thirteenth amendment, and the apparent encouragement given to those states by President Johnson. In June of 1866 congress passed the fourteenth amendment, which embodied the ideas of the "civil rights" bill and provided penalties for limiting the suffrage of any class of citizens. This was not ratified till July, 1868. In the next year the final amendment growing out of the Civil War passed congress and went to the states for their approval. This was proclaimed in March, 1870, and denied to the United States and to the states the power to refuse suffrage to any one "on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude." Thus was completed, by constitutional amendment, the process by which the nation annihilated slavery. The United States now began that career of unrivaled national prosperity on which it might have entered in 1840 had not slavery blocked the way.

While many of the results of the struggle of nationality and slavery were negative, yet, in general, a new national consciousness was born in this life-and-death struggle which prepared the nation to enter with greater vigor upon its new career. What this new movement is, and what its dominant and controlling principle is, forms a new organizing principle controlling its events, also its discovery and application in the teaching of the new period is of vital importance, pedagogical as well as historical.

## THE PERIOD OF CONSOLIDATION AND EXPANSION

**The Character of the Period.** The tendency to consolidation came with overwhelming force in the conduct of the Civil War and the Reconstruction period. Necessity observes no law very long. When the life and death struggle came, the nation seized power in self-defense. The Confederacy did the same. When reconstruction came, with the South prostrate, there was no opposition save what the broken Democratic Party could offer. The exercise of great national powers, constitutional or non-constitutional, came in the new period as a habit.

In some cases the South roused herself to oppose the exercise of great national power, such as the effort to grant "National Aid to Education." But no more striking exercise of national power has been exhibited than was that shown by Grover Cleveland in ordering out regular troops to suppress a railroad strike, or his reassertion of the Monroe Doctrine in the dispute between England and Venezuela.

The term "expansion" has reference, first of all, to the addition of territory to our limits. The first came in the purchase of Alaska, by Secretary Seward, from Russia.

The second event came in the final annexation of Hawaii, after the war with Spain broke out. The third step came in our treaty with Spain,—the annexation of the Philippines, Porto Rico, and the establishment of a protectorate over Cuba. And the fourth, and last, step was the acquisition of a strip of land across the Isthmus of Panama for the building of the great canal.

The widening of the authority of the United States has compelled her to assume a place among the nations of

the world which she did not formerly hold and against which many of our statesmen objected. It seemed to be flying in the face of Washington's and Jefferson's advice, to say nothing of the Monroe Doctrine. The cry now going up (1914) in favor of the application of the doctrine of "Manifest Destiny" to Mexico and Central America is significant.

**Present Day Problems.** (1) What are they in government? (a) The original plans of separate and distinct functions are being modified. In no case have we seen more proof than in the administrations of Presidents Roosevelt and Wilson. The tendency is to make a premier out of the president. This means the subordination of members of congress to the desires of the executive. Why should it not be so? What are the advantages and dangers of the idea? (b) The movement for the referendum, the recall, and for state primaries seems to be going right on. The president has suggested a presidential primary to congress. (c) Likewise, the agitation for woman suffrage promises great results, not only in giving woman the ballot, but in the causes for which she may use her right. (d) The effort of Secretary Bryan to secure peace with the world met with a temporary set-back in the raising of the question of American citizenship for Asiatics in California, and in connection with the revolutionary movement in Mexico. (e) The commission form of government has been gaining in favor together with the referendum and the recall.

(2) The leading industrial problems just settled or still under discussion (1914). This entire period has been a time in which industrial questions have been uppermost. (a) New problems have arisen in regard to preparation and distribution of the products of the farms, the forests, the mines, and animals raised for meat. (b) New

discoveries and inventions have gone right on. (c) The war between capital and labor seems no nearer final settlement. A number of states, however, have some form of arbitration, but more seem willing to face compulsory settlement of disputes. Will it not come to this? How long have life and property been wasted in this way? (d) The Inter-State Commerce Commission, created in Cleveland's first administration, is still busy with railroad rates. (e) Out of its work came the parcels post to compete with the express companies. (f) The Wilson administration has carried through a lower tariff, an income tax, a law regulating the currency, and a law repealing the provision granting free tolls to American coastwise trade. (g) A number of states have fixed eight hours as a day's work and have prescribed a minimum rate of wages.

(3) Religious and philanthropic movements. (a) Perhaps the tendency of several branches of the Protestant church to unite or to form inter-denominational organizations is the most important movement of our time. (b) Closely related to this movement is the establishment of mission work in the crowded cities. The work is partly religious and partly economic. (c) Closely akin to this are the movements for living among the lower classes,—usually carried on by university people. This connects with education. (d) Among the more powerful of inter-denominational organizations is the Anti-Saloon League whose purpose is the combating of the drink evil. (e) The latest move of the allied temperance organizations is for an amendment to the Constitution establishing national prohibition (1914).

(4) Educational Forces. Since the era of reconstruction the educational forces have been tremendous in their growth and development. (a) The older universities

have entered upon a career of unexampled growth. One has reached the ten thousand mark and others are following close after. (b) The newer state universities have laid stress upon the development of technical training and have, by extension and correspondence courses, sought to bring every branch of knowledge to the door of the individual. (c) The South has witnessed a great revival in all forms of educational work, ranging from the study of Latin to the problem of how to make an acre of land produce the most corn. (d) The night school—general and technical—for those whose early training is deficient or for those who wish to continue their education while working.

(5) The Social Forces. The family was one of the first organized institutions, if not the first. Many of its problems are connected with other institutions. Especially the pressure of economic conditions brings social changes. (a) Such as making late marriages and small families the rule. More still, bachelors and spinsters seem to be permanent factors in American social life. (b) Another is the increasing number of divorces. Social causes enter here also. There is some agitation in favor of a national divorce law. (c) Moral survey committees have done considerable work in favor of better moral and social conditions. (d) Playgrounds have become a great factor in the life of cities, and, with well organized clubs for boys—indoors and outdoors—are destined to do a great work in the moral uplift of future citizens.

# THE ELEMENTARY PHASES OF HISTORY TEACHING

## THE SENSE PHASE OF HISTORY

### The General Problem

**Logical and Psychological Method.** That which is logically first in a subject comes last into the possession of the unfolding mind, and that which comes psychologically first to the growing mental powers stands logically last in the subject. But every fact that occupies the line between these two mental points looks back to that which precedes as means, and forward to that which follows as end. This is the justification for the arrangement of the subject-matter in this book. No one can intelligently determine what the method of history work should be without first discovering the logical relations in the subject-matter itself. The subject in its scientific form stands as the goal toward which every lesson must point, no matter where the material is found along the line between these two points. It is in this spirit that the lower phases of history study are to be considered. Not that the lower forms have no value in themselves, but rather that their relations to the higher phases of the study constitute one of their greatest pedagogical meanings.

#### HOW THE PROBLEM CHANGES

However, we must now take into account a guiding fact not before considered, namely, the gradual unfolding of the powers of the immature mind. We start now at the other end of the line of mental life and work forward toward the ideal of mind and subject set forth in the

preceding discussions. The mind's degree of strength and the characteristics which mark its various stages of growth constitute a new and determining principle in our problem. The organized body of knowledge with which we have been busy must yield to this principle. Logical relations must give way to psychological conditions. The child with its intellectual and moral possibilities passing over into actualities is the all-controlling factor in primary method. This is the greatest adjusting principle in all primary teaching.

If we approach the question from the side of mind, we find the law of dependence holding between its forms of activity. The senses furnish material for the imagination, and both supply matter for the understanding, and the latter for the reason. The phase of history already discussed pertains to those attributes, relations, and laws furnished mainly by the understanding and reason. From the point of view of mind, therefore, we have yet to discuss the material of history in its relation to these lower forms of mental life,—the senses and the imagination. This is really another double problem. Here we are again to show how the material of history is transformed by, and also transforms, the lower mental activities.

### Nature of Observation Work in History

Does history have a Sense phase? History deals with the thought and feeling of a people. A people's thought and feeling are expressed in outward acts. These acts are sensuous and physical; they can be seen, heard, and felt. But, while the events of history were objects of observation to persons who lived when and where they occurred, they can never be present to the senses again. For the most part, the field of history is beyond the

reach of the senses. It is just as true, also, that the child, up to the time he reaches school, has been observing and participating in the acts of men,—has been experiencing history. While the acts observed in this period of the child's life are not the individual facts he will study in after days, yet so great is the transforming power of the imagination that it can take the deeds presented to the senses and build from them pictures of the actions of all people of all times. The events that thus occur in the presence of the pupil's senses belong in the domain of all the institutions of human society. He is born into and remains a member of the family. He early learns the connection between occupations and his supply of food and clothing. At five or six he enters school, and, it is quite likely, before this he has been to Sunday school and church. If he be an average boy, he has taken an active personal interest in a political campaign. There thus seems to be a pretty wide field in which the pupil has already entered. Let this spontaneous process go on till the class has covered all local geography except that which relates to man. Such an arrangement would permit the teacher to combine this last part of sense geography with sense history.

**The Purpose.** In order that we may accomplish definite results in the work of observation, the end toward which we work must be clearly in mind. The answer may be given in terms of mind and of subject. 1. On the side of mind: (a) the primary object is to confer the habit of judging men's thoughts and feelings through their acts; (b) a secondary end is to give the habit of careful observation—the habit of finding truth in objects present to the sense. 2. On the side of the subject: (a) the primary object is to give the mind material out of which the imagination

may construct pictures of historical events; (b) the secondary purpose, or rather result, is to give a more thorough knowledge of local institutions. The primary end on the side of mind is peculiar to history. No other subject, in all its phases, puts the mind to the test of finding man's head and heart in his acts. This is a power conferred by the study of history at every point. When the mind begins to struggle with this problem, its material should be in its very presence and be sensuous and simple. A result, rather than a purpose, will be to give the mind the habit of studying objects that appeal to the sense. This is not peculiar to this kind of history work, but is rather a mental result to which many subjects contribute. The primary end on the side of the subject grows out of the relation between the sensuous and the picture-making phases of mental life. Because of the close dependence between them, it is right to say that sense history has its highest significance in the fact that it gives the mind the material that makes possible the next stage of the work,— the picture-making stage. Most of the events of history are representative and their mastery by the higher powers of the mind largely depends on the clearness and fullness with which the imagination can picture them. Now, the skill of the imagination partly depends on the material furnished through the senses. It seems right therefore, to say that the primary aim here is to prepare for the second phase of history study. Since events must reach the mind through the language of books or of teachers, it is right to say that this first phase of work prepares the mind to put meaning into the language, by means of which events are described to the imagination. It is no unusual thing for the pupil not to be able to put content into the words of the

history text. He feels that a recitation must be made, and his only resource is to commit the language of the lesson. In such cases the book fails to arouse the pupil's imagination, because the content of the book is foreign to his experience. In other words, the pupil has not been properly prepared for the ideas and vocabulary of the history text. From this point of view we seem justified in holding that the primary purpose in this phase is to prepare the mind for the picture-making phase. This makes it clear that a knowledge of local institutions is a result, rather than an end; or it may be regarded as a means to the primary end. This signifies that local institutions are to be studied at this point only in so far as they prepare material for the imagination. The knowledge of affairs could hardly be the primary aim on account of the degree of mental strength.

**The Material for Observation in History.** The matter presented is merely suggestive and presupposes two things: 1. That the pupil has been in school two or three years and has finished local geography, except that part dealing with man and his institutions. 2. That the teacher sees the intimate connections between local political geography and sense history.

In opening up a new field of study to the immature mind, the point of beginning is a question of some importance. The part taken first is determined by the principle that the mind deals most easily with material familiar to it through frequent and intimate experience. This condition is fully met by the family. Into this institution the pupil was born eight or nine years ago. He has differentiated himself from his young friends by recognizing himself as a member of a certain family, and has also put them into groups on the basis of family connections. His wants and desires have been

supplied by the family, and around it and its members his affections have twined themselves. The question now is what the family furnishes for his observation that will aid in the study of social life,—will aid in picturing their life of customs and deeds, and in making inferences from these as to their thought and feeling. The following topics point the way toward the answer:—

1. The relationship between parents and children. The main ideas here are the parents as lawgivers and the children as obedient subjects. The pupil can see himself under a rule of action common to each member of his related group, and must see some of the results that attend obedience and disobedience. In Bible history he will be called on to construct a system of government built out of the family tie.

2. Relation of the family to food, clothing, and shelter opens up a fertile field. Among the many things we may suggest are the water supply, the gas, the electricity, the delivery wagon, the postman, and so on. Some will carry the child into the realm of local government and some into business. His duties as a member of the family and the mutual dependence of each upon the whole can be brought out. Here he is beginning to study those sensuous phenomena which, in later years, become the subject matter of history, political science, economics, and sociology.

3. Relationship between families. This subject opens the whole field of observable social life. The study of customs—particularly pastimes and games—will be an inviting field to the young pupil; he will lay up a vast fund of material out of which he will construct the social life of the past.

In studying his physical wants in the family he touched intimately the industrial life of the community.

This new field opens a wide range of simple, observable facts. Here are a few lines that may be worked out:—

1. The kinds of occupations and their relation to one another. The lesson of mutual dependence can be taught here again, but on a much wider scale than was illustrated in the family.

2. Effect of different kinds of occupations on the habits and customs of the people.

3. The protection of property by law. A study may be made of the process by which this is done. This would include the arrest and temporary imprisonment of the accused, summoning witnesses, the trial, and the punishment. A good opportunity is here offered to judge of the thought and feeling of men as expressed in their acts. What did the owner of the property and his neighbors do when the theft occurred? Why? The answer must come in terms of their thoughts and feelings. How does the accused man feel, and what does he think? How do you know? Why should he be tried, and what is the purpose of fining and imprisoning him? The pupil may not be able to penetrate and fully interpret all these acts; but this is so vital an act of mind in all historical investigation that the pupil cannot begin too soon, and push it as far as his strength will allow.

The study of the school at first hand is more difficult: 1. Something of the intention of his parents in sending him to school, and its character, must be presented to him, with as much of its significance as he can master. 2. The different grades of schools and their wide distribution will suggest what an ambitious person may do. 3. How the teacher is selected and paid, and the pupil's relation to him in the school.

The church is, in most of its phases, beyond the child's

power. But even here something may be done by observation and study: 1. The kinds of religious denominations must be seen as due to differences in thought. 2. The purpose of the church and Sunday school determined from the acts they do. 3. The social customs connected with the church.

There is another very important and fruitful field for observation work in history — the political.

1. Every neighborhood furnishes the pupil examples of men set apart by some process to perform the duties of local government. The mode of selection, the purpose, and duties of such officers should be brought under the pupil's observation.

2. If he live in town or city, there is still greater opportunity for this study; the policeman in uniform, the mayor, the assessor, the men who work in the streets, — each of these calls for attention.

3. Political events, especially those connected with state and national campaigns, furnish abundant and valuable material. Besides, by the concrete and sensuous character of the events, they have moved his feelings very intensely. The chances are that long before ten years of age he has participated in more than one political demonstration. Whatever may be said about the desirability of a child sharing so early in political prejudices, it is certainly true that it gives him an abundant supply of material to aid in putting content into events that can only appear to him in the realm of imagination. All the glitter and show, pomp and parade, noise and music of a campaign are not lost on a boy. They have a value for him far beyond the immediate present. Think of the gorgeous picture that flashes before his senses and impresses itself upon his memory: brass bands, large numbers of great decorated wagons

drawn by spans of spirited horses, and filled with grace and beauty, great men riding in state,—governors, senators, statesmen, and orators,—uniformed ranks with stately tread, long lines of brilliant torches, the flash and flare of fireworks, the roar of cannon, the billows of human huzzas, triumphal arches and banners with inscriptions!

Two boys—one has never seen this picture or its like, while the other had been a part of it; which of them can picture most fully and vividly a Roman triumph, the celebration of a king's coronation, the greeting that Columbus received on his return to Spain, the reception of the royal governor in Virginia, the procession that paid honor to Washington as he passed through the land, the grand review in Washington at the close of the Civil War? There can be but one answer. Again, this observation of a political demonstration on the part of the pupil gives the teacher a rare opportunity to cultivate the historic judgment. What were his feelings? Why did he participate at the parade? What was the purpose of the other people in taking part and what was their feeling? How did the persons who stayed at home and refused to join the demonstration feel? Thus, by questions, the pupil may be led to analyze the outside show and the inner significance of a political demonstration.

**General Conclusion.** The interest in neighborhood institutions which should take root in this phase of work ought to grow throughout life. A permanent and abiding interest in the home community is closely akin to intelligent patriotism, and may be secured by means of a line of work dealing with some phase of local institutional life and extending over the entire period of school work. This suggestion brings the pupil into direct contact with

the subject of local or community civics. At each step the facts studied must be present to the pupil through personal observation, if possible, and in no case should they consist of a bare enumeration of certain local dignitaries by means of an official terminology. The concrete institutional process is what the pupil should see and understand. In the beginnings of such observation, more of the concrete process will be seen and less of its meaning understood, but the growth of power over the latter will come with continued effort and wider observation as the field expands so as to include the entire group of social studies.

Such work not only finds its justification in its bearing on the affairs of the community, but also in the fact that it furnishes a basis in actual experience for the proper understanding of all institutions. As this work grows, the teacher will observe an increasing capacity and desire on the part of the pupil to make the connection between the historical products of his own community and state, and the historical process which he is tracing in the events of the past. The presence of such a power and inclination should be hailed with delight on the part of the teacher and should be properly stimulated by increased opportunities. Such work has a sort of double value: it lifts the institutional facts of the community up to their place in the general historical process and at the same time brings the apparently remote historical movement down to the present, and roots it among the concrete life of which the pupil is a part. For every discovery thus made the pupil will become a better citizen and a better student of history. There is no time-limit to this process of making local institutions and the historical processes of institutions contribute to the understanding of each other. It is not desirable to give equal attention to both

phases, but complete separation at any time in the study of American history makes the best results impossible.

The conclusion is, that first hand experience with institutions in the concrete all along the line of historical study, will not only enrich the life of the coming citizen, but will add many fold to the pupil's and student's power over the great past.

## THE PICTURE-MAKING PHASE OF HISTORY

### The General Problem

**Nature and Immediate Purpose.** Any attempt to draw sharp lines of separation between the phases of history based on the phases of mental activity will result in harm. These phases are not distinct. They transfuse—each is found in the others. The picture-making phase of history looks two ways,—back to sense material, and forward to reflective work. We know that one purpose of the sensuous side of history is to furnish the memory an abundance of material upon which the imagination can draw in the process of creating events in pictured form. While it is true that in the first phase of the work the mind is mainly absorbed in sensuous events which it uses in the second, yet, as the pupils go through life, the senses are open and material is accumulated at every stage. So, too, the judgment, in some of its forms, is present in the first two stages of the work as well as predominant in the third.

The immediate purpose of the picture-making phase of history is to give the mind that peculiar form of activity which its stage of growth calls for. As the mind passes from immaturity toward maturity, it enters a phase of activity in which picture making is very active. At this period the mind delights in image making and takes more interest in it than in any other. It ought, therefore, to be given all the opportunity it craves for this form of exercise. To cultivate—stimulate and strengthen—the imagination is the immediate intellectual end to be held in view in this second stage of the work. We have seen that history has to deal with two sets of parallel phenomena, an inner and an outer,—ideas and events. The latter

are sensuous and external, and can be pictured with all the attributes that characterized them in their sensuous form —just as they appeared to the eyes and ears of the men who witnessed them. So true is the imagination to the senses, if it have an opportunity, that one may become so absorbed in the picture as to feel for a moment that he stands in the very presence of the scenes recounted. When we reflect upon the fact that every great wave of human thought and feeling has expressed itself in external phenomena that may thus be vividly reproduced by the imagination, it becomes evident that this phase of historical knowledge must play an important part in the study of any portion of this subject; and it becomes our immediate purpose on the side of the subject to give the imagination possession of this form of historical material.

**Relation Between Picture Making and the Judgment.** This phase of the study has been called the story side of history. The name is significant because it emphasizes that which charms us most in the real story,—the movement of a stream of pictures which the story sets going in our imagination. These charm us by the ease with which they come and go, and by the richness and variety which they present. Their characters are concrete—they are given a sensuous setting. This is not unlike what happens in the story side of history; the pupil becomes consciously interested in the acts and actors that history reproduces, as it were, before his very eyes. It is the picture presented that interests and absorbs him, rather than the possible relations which may be revealed by the judgment under the direction of the teacher.

The conclusion must not be drawn that imagination is the only form of mental activity in this kind of work. The judgment is always present, even when the imagination is at its best. Neither excludes the other, but they are

mutually helpful. The historical judgment is really dependent upon the imagination for its material. Thought and feeling cannot be inferred unless the imagination calls the deeds back to life again. In its turn, the work of the judgment reacts upon the pictured scene and not only makes it more vivid, but more permanent as well. Let us call up the picture of the battle of Bunker Hill at the close of the second retreat. How different is the scene inside and outside of the breastworks! As the imagination pictures the hill-slope strewn with British dead and wounded, and the Americans comparatively unhurt behind their rude fort, the judgment finds one explanation in the relation which the fort bears to the conflict. What is the effect on the picture of the judgment passing from fort to British and from fort to Americans as it searches for the explanation? There can be but one result,—a stronger and more lasting picture of the scene. The parts of the picture are no more the simple, independent parts they were when the imagination first began to light up the scene, but now they are tied together forever by the relation of contrasted results due to the same cause.

If the above be true, why not make the exercise of the judgment the immediate purpose, on the side of knowledge, for which the second phase of history is studied? Three reasons are against it: 1. The mind at this stage makes pictures more easily than it searches for relations. 2. The picture absorbs attention and effort more easily. 3. On picture making depends higher work. Picture making, therefore, should characterize the work at some time. If not done now it will mean that the pupil must do work that could have better been done at an earlier date.

**The Remote Purpose.** The above point brings us face to face with the question of the remote ends to be

gained by the picture phase of history work. If the pupil be conscious of an end in this work, he thinks only of the immediate end on the side of knowledge. He is not conscious of a remote end. What if the teacher is in the same predicament? In order that the pupil may do the picture-making side of his work well, the teacher must be living under the inspiration that comes from the reflective side of the work. There is little hope for pupil or teacher should the latter not see in this phase of work the steps on which the pupil is to climb to higher realms. The remote end must always control the immediate, for the latter is means to the former. How shall the means be handled? How shall the picture-making phase of work be carried on,—in what spirit, along what lines, and to what extent in any line? Now these questions cannot be answered accurately unless the teacher see how this work is to issue in power to gain more and higher knowledge—unless the remote end be constantly before the mind as the guiding light.

In discussing the remote ends to be reached by this kind of history teaching, it is hardly necessary to distinguish between discipline and knowledge. Both the kind of mental exercise and the form of knowledge to be reached will perhaps serve equally well as remote ends to guide one in leading the pupil so that he gets the best discipline in this phase of the work, and at the same time lays the best foundation for the new work.[1]

**The Ethical Purpose.** It will be observed that the ends discussed above relate to the intellectual side of this phase of the work. Ethical or moral results in teaching are ends in themselves and can hardly be discriminated as

[1] It is quite possible that the distinction between teaching for discipline and teaching for knowledge is a mechanical one, and that the teaching for highest discipline is precisely the teaching that gives the highest knowledge.

immediate and remote; at least they need not be so differentiated for this discussion. The formation of a noble character is the primary aim of all teaching. In respect to the development of the ethical side of the pupil, history, from the nature of its material, lends itself to such an end more readily and more efficiently than many other subjects. This appears from the discussion relating to the ethical value of interpretation. Indeed, the ethical element is present in every stage of history work. Wherever history reveals a conflict between individual men, between parties, between nations, or, where the view is profound enough, between ideas themselves, there will appear the ethical element and there will exist the opportunity to add fresh stimulus to the ethical nature.

Although the intellectual and ethical purposes of this phase of work have been separated for purposes of discussion, it must not be inferred that the elements of character to which they correspond are so separated. Character is so completely a unit that it is pedagogically dangerous to isolate its elements even in thought. They are essential and coöperating parts in the organic process called life or character. Hence the danger of setting up one of these elements as the supreme end in the teaching of any phase of history work.

## The Material for Picture Making

### for the first three or four years — patriotic anniversaries

**The Celebration of National and State Holidays.** We have seen that the study of local institutions is both geographical and historical and that the pupil goes through life constantly gathering sense impressions of these institutions. During the first three or four years of school work history is not studied as such, but only

incidentally are historical matters appealing to the senses and to the imagination studied. Among the simple, concrete material are the national and state holidays. Many of them are taken for their patriotic and other influences.

Because of the sensuous-picture-making stage of the pupil and because of the nature of the events themselves, these anniversaries can be repeated for several years. The teacher must take care, however, to give the occasion a different setting at each repetition to prevent the pupil from growing tired of their recurrence each year. As the pupils gain in strength and knowledge the teacher should add new and higher significance to the events.

**The Outline of the Days.** Following the school year we find Labor Day at the very beginning. The purpose of this day is to teach respect for labor. The great procession of floats represents different occupations,—sometimes the historical development of some industry.

Columbus Day, October 12, the day of the great discovery. This may include the story of early struggle, his visit to Spain, the interest of the great Queen in his voyage, the voyage, and his reception on returning to Spain.

Thanksgiving Day. The Pilgrims; the Mayflower; Plymouth Rock; Miles Standish; the first winter; the cause of Thanksgiving. How we celebrate the day. A picture of the Mayflower and of a modern steamer will show progress.

The Holiday Season —Christmas and New Year's. The spirit of giving is the great characteristic of Christmas. The spirit of the New Year is represented in new resolutions to achieve nobler things.

Lincoln's Birthday, February 12. Born in 1809.

Poverty. Presenting soldier with a fish. Moves to Indiana backwoods. Mother dies, but his stepmother proves a real mother. Peacemaker at home and in school. Anxious to read books—by the fire, in the fields, and at rest time. Size and strength at 17. How he wins the hearts of people. He hates slavery but not the slaveholder. Made president. Beloved by the soldier boys. Sets the negroes free. Why people cried when the news came of his death.

Washington's Birthday, February 22. Born on a plantation. Studied hard and played hard. At 16 goes as surveyor with companions, across the mountains. Death gives him beautiful Mount Vernon, on the Potomac. Loved outdoor life. Stories of his courage in the French War and in the Revolutionary War. Story of serving his country as general and as president without pay. Parting scenes with his generals, and with the people, as president. Returns to Mount Vernon. Receives General Lafayette. Their parting.

Memorial Day, May 30. To cover the graves of soldiers with flowers. The two great soldiers of the Civil War, Grant and Lee. Decorate the Union and Confederate dead together—a beautiful ceremony and a high honor to the dead. Shows how old soldiers only remember the noble deeds of each other.

Flag Day, June 14. Story of the making of the first flag. Betsy Ross and Washington. The Petticoat flag at Fort Schuyler. The meaning of the colors. Story of "The Star-Spangled Banner."

Independence Day, or the Fourth of July. The great men who made the Declaration of Independence. Story of the Liberty Bell. How we celebrate the Fourth.

Other Days. Celebrate local heroes, or events, coming at various times during the school year.

MYTH, LEGEND, FOLKLORE

**History and Literature.** We have already seen how history and local geography are related. In the first three or four years of school life the pupil is in a peculiar mental state. He lives in dreamland with fancy running riot. He peoples his world with mythical beings and loves to live in this world of fancied beings. These creations are more or less real to him, although they may be ever so ludicrous and grotesque.

This stage of mental life demands that the pupil have fairy stories, stories of mythical persons, and folklore stories. This type of tale ought to furnish him with a part of his reading work, for the sake of the literature as well as for the history. In a very important sense this will give him experiences closely akin to genuine history. These stories deal with personages. The persons or characters are constantly putting forth acts that are most interesting. To him and to the teacher the acts or deeds are signs of their thoughts and feelings. However grotesque or unreal these acts, they are intended to signify something. The language used harmonizes with the acts.

Therefore, the pupil as he threads his way through the delights of the fairy story, the myth or other story, has an abundance of experience in reading thoughts, purposes, ideas, and feelings out of the actions put forth. The acts or events are the creations of the fancy or of the imagination. The material out of which they were made came from the pupil's observation of physical events.

In many cases these stories are highly dramatic, since they present characters in conflict with each other. Sometimes the characters stand for opposing and conflicting ideas. Their purposes and, therefore, their

deeds are different. The outcome of the story is to show how one character and the purpose for which he stands triumphs over another.

This type of story is the product of the creative imagination and is, therefore, literature, and may furnish material for reading lessons. But in addition it furnishes the pupil with just the kind of experience he needs as a preparation for the study of real history. To him these characters are often real. They live by the aid of imagination. They act. They perform heroic deeds, and their deeds are in harmony with their thoughts and feelings. For the pupil, consciously or unconsciously, to see the acts and thoughts of these characters in conflict, or to infer thoughts and feelings from acts he witnesses is a genuine preparation for the study of history.

### THE TRANSITIONAL STORY

**Semi-Historical Stories.** The transition is not so abrupt from the myth and folklore stories to the story of the real historical person, if we begin by weaving the facts of history around a person created by the imagination.

The marshaling of historical facts around an interesting personage—ideal or real—gives them a coloring and depth of interest that can be supplied in no other way. These facts become invested with a portion of the interest and the attributes of life that attach to the person whose career and experiences are being followed. It seems quite clear that an ideal historical character may be the center of a story such as that found in *Ten Boys on the Road from Long Ago to Now*. The truth is that the real child takes an interest in things far beyond his ability to understand their

connections. By being interested in adult people he becomes interested in the doings of adult people. In the little work alluded to above, we see it illustrated in the case of each of the ten characters. It is plain in the case of the Aryan boy when he participates in the rude worship of his family or follows the migrations of his kindred down into the plains of the Indus. Again, what real child will not sympathize with the typical lad, Ezekiel, when he calls out to his mother from the anguish of his little heart, as he sees his father dragged to jail: "How shall we get father back again?" It even makes a different impression upon the adult mind, because of the personal interest in Ezekiel, than would the account in the ordinary text of the persecution of the Puritans in the time of James I. When Ezekiel's father comes back from the harsh treatment of the prison, what need is there to search for other causes of the Puritan migration to New England? In other words, great facts of history may be made to fasten themselves into the minds and hearts of pupils, because these facts are seen to have fastened themselves into the hearts and thoughts of boys and girls in whom the pupils have an interest. This is based on a universal law of human life,—that life begets life; sympathy calls forth sympathy; conditions and experiences not too foreign call from the human mind the same thoughts and feelings that are experienced by the parties who live under the conditions and undergo the experiences.

What is contended for in this phase of picture-making history is a presentation that parallels such geographical stories as the *Seven Little Sisters*, *Each and All*, *Little Folks of the Other Lands*, and *Pilgrim Stories*.

What more unique and interesting characters could be woven into an historical story than a Puritan boy

and girl? The wealth of incident here would be the only serious drawback. The hard struggle of the first families against cold and hunger; how a few families formed a town which grew by additions; how the church and the school occupied much of the children's time; what their experiences were with the Indians; how they felt and acted toward them, and what an Indian war meant; how these Puritan families in the town got their living; what pastimes were regarded as innocent and what as injurious; how the little town dealt with offenders against law and custom; the high respect and esteem in which all held the minister of the village.

In deep and striking contrast with the stories of New England life, as seen through youthful eyes, would stand the experience of a planter's son and daughter. What differences of environment; life on a plantation instead of in a town; few associates instead of the society of many; private instruction instead of the schools, and then a long journey to college or a trip abroad for the son; the presence of negro slaves; he may visit the quarters and see how they are fed and clothed; follow them in the performance of their duties in the field or around the house. No doubt, the young planter will reveal in his conduct the pride of his family in their ancestors, their broad acres, and their negroes; no doubt, he will also reveal his feeling of social superiority over the children of the overseer and the non-slaveholder. What materials for an absorbing story—nothing like it in the rest of America!

We must not forget the boy in broad-brimmed hat and drab clothes who came over with William Penn and witnessed the great treaty. There is still another boy, living up on the Hudson, whose name is Knickerbocker;

he founded the Empire state, and had many interesting experiences very different from our other boys.

We have outlined, in this brief way, a field of work in colonial history that is practically unoccupied, and which eventually would yield rich results if cultivated by skillful hands.

### THE INDIAN STORY

We now come to a story that is also a product of the creative imagination, but, in a way, the opposite of the preceding stories. In the stories thus far the hero has been created, but events have been the product of history itself. In the Indian story the facts or events are reconstructed—created—and woven around an individual more or less real. The Indian left few records, except when he came in contact with the white man. But we can find some sort of records of great chiefs, such as Massasoit, King Philip, Red Jacket, and Tecumseh, but very little of the life they lived outside of their contact with the white man.

This story is only one step removed from fancy. It is the story of a people at once crude and primitive. The very forests around them were untouched save by their little clearings. Here they lived after the most primitive fashion in tents made of poles and the skins of animals.

Along the streams they fished with the crudest sort of arrangements for taking fish which children delight to make. In the deep places of the forests they hunted game with instruments that boys can make, and when caught, the game was rudely dressed and cooked over the fire in a manner so primitive that children love to repeat the process.

In some choice spot in the wilderness they girdled the trees with stone axes and used fire in burning huge

logs to make a place for cornfield and garden. Here the squaw worked with stone hoe cutting down the weeds that threatened the simple crop. When the corn was ripe they pounded it in a mortar, making a coarse kind of meal from which was baked bread, usually among the ashes.

In addition to this rude agriculture,—which fell mostly to the lot of the Indian women,—the males regarded themselves as fighters, warriors, to protect their women and children, their rude homes, and their hunting grounds from rival tribes. Their fighting was done, before the coming of the whites, with clubs, tomahawks made of stone, and bows and arrows. They loved to conceal themselves and burst upon the enemy with murderous shouts, or, waiting till nightfall, creep up and apply the torch to their frail wigwams. They loved show, making a great display of war-paint and feathers. Have you never seen boys, dressed as Indians, skulking through imaginary forests, concealing themselves behind imaginary trees, and springing in fury upon their imaginary foes? The remains of implements used by the Indians, generally made of stone, the skins and bones of animals, and specimens of rude clothes, together with beads and basket making, will give the children additional means of observation and impress upon them the fact that the American Indians were once a genuine race of men.

The great advantage in giving some attention to Indian stories lies in the fact that the pupil will thus have made unconsciously a great step towards understanding the background of American history. He can better understand why the Indian, in the main, became a hindrance to the progress of America. In this way he will be better prepared for his study of discovery and colonization. If this be not done, the

child will not only suffer for a lack of knowledge of Indian affairs, but will be handicapped in understanding this obstacle to the progress in colonial life and to life on the frontier.

THE REAL HERO

**The Story of the Real Historical Person.** While the pupil has been enriching his imagination in the first three years of school life, he has likewise been extending his observation upon men and institutions and has more and more been exercising the rudimentary forms of judgment upon them. But to genuine history he is still a stranger.

In the order of difficulty, he comes in his fourth year to the story of the real historical person, the man of flesh and blood. If he still have some lingering tendencies to fancy and romance, he will not find it difficult to begin the new phase with heroes like Leif Ericson who sailed in that peculiar-looking ship of the Norsemen to the coast of North America, and whose life and doings are told in old Norse sagas or songs. Nor is the marvelous story of Marco Polo lacking in the elements of romance; how he journeyed to the far East, spent many years in the service of the great Khan, or wandering about regions peopled with rich cities, or his return to his native Venice only to find himself unknown by his former neighbors.

Thus it appears that the pupil can have satisfied his longing for the romantic and his love of the imaginative in the story of the real historical person. At the same time, in this story, he is stimulated to test the simple forms of judgment. These acts of judgment are called simple because the stories present in pictorial form facts and characters about which the judgment acts. This concrete judgment does not mean that the mind

cannot classify the stories and their characters. For simple concrete form of classification Mace's Primary History presents abundant examples:

THE PERIOD OF DISCOVERY AND COLONIZATION

THE NORTHMEN AND THE MOST FAMOUS TRAVELER IN THE FAR EAST.
Leif Ericson, Who Discovered Vinland.
Marco Polo, the Man Who Wrote a Book about the Far East.
CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, THE FIRST GREAT MAN IN AMERICAN HISTORY.
He Sought India and Found America.
THE MEN WHO SUCCEEDED WHERE COLUMBUS FAILED.
Magellan, Who Proved That the World is Round by Sailing Around It.
Cortés, Who Found the Rich City of Mexico.
Pizarro, Who Found the Richest City in the World.
TWO MEN WHO PROVED THAT NORTH AMERICA HAD NO MORE RICH CITIES.
Coronado, Who Discovered New Kinds of Towns and the Grand Canyon of the Colorado.
De Soto, the Discoverer of the Mississippi.
THE MEN WHO MADE AMERICA KNOWN TO ENGLAND AND WHO CHECKED THE PROGRESS OF SPAIN.
John Cabot Searches for a Shorter Route to India and Finds the Mainland of North America.
Sir Francis Drake, the English "Dragon" Who Sailed the Spanish Main and Who "Singed the King of Spain's Beard."
Sir Walter Raleigh, the Friend of Elizabeth, Plants a Colony in America to Check the Power of Spain.
FAMOUS PEOPLE IN EARLY VIRGINIA.
John Smith, the Savior of Virginia, and Pocahontas, its Good Angel.
Sir William Berkeley, the Cavalier Governor, and Nathaniel Bacon, the First American Rebel.
Lord Baltimore, in a Part of Virginia, Founds Maryland as a Home for Persecuted Catholics (1634) and Welcomes Protestants.
SOME OLD ENGLAND PURITANS IN NEW ENGLAND.
Elder Brewster, the Pilgrim Preacher, and Miles Standish, the Pilgrim Soldier.
John Winthrop, the Founder of Boston; Roger Williams, the Founder of Rhode Island; and Thomas Hooker, the Founder of Connecticut.
THE MEN WHO PLANTED COLONIES FOR MANY KINDS OF PEOPLE.
Henry Hudson, Whose Discoveries Led Dutch Traders to Colonize New Netherland.
Peter Stuyvesant, the Great Dutch Governor of New Netherland.

William Penn founds a Home for the Quakers, but Makes Welcome all Persecuted Christians.
James Ogelthorpe, the Founder of Georgia as a Home for English Debtors, as a Place for Persecuted Protestants, and as a Barrier Against the Spaniards.

THE MEN WHO PLANTED NEW FRANCE IN AMERICA AND THREATENED TO KEEP THE ENGLISH SOUTH OF THE ST. LAWRENCE AND THE LAKES, AND EAST OF THE MOUNTAINS.

Samuel de Champlain, the Father of New France.
Joliet and Marquette, Fur Trader and Missionary, Explore the Mississippi Valley for New France.
LaSalle and Hennepin Pushed Forward the Work Begun by Joliet and Marquette.
Montcalm, the Defender, and Wolfe, the Conqueror of New France.

## THE PERIOD OF THE REVOLUTION

THE MEN WHO DEFENDED AMERICA BY TONGUE AND PEN.

Patrick Henry, the Orator of the Revolution.
Samuel Adams, the Firebrand of the Revolution.

THE MEN WHO FOUGHT FOR AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE WITH GUN AND SWORD:

George Washington, the First General and First President of the United States.
The Three Men Who Prepared the Way for the Capture of Burgoyne's Army.
Generals Greene, Morgan, and Marion, the Men Who Helped Win the South from the British.

THE MEN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE FIGHTING ENGLAND ON THE SEA.

Paul Jones, a Scotchman, Who Won the Great Victory in the French Ship, "Bon Homme Richard."
John Barry, Who Won More Sea Fights in the Revolution than Any Other Captain.

THE MAN WHO HELPED WIN INDEPENDENCE BY WINNING THE HEARTS OF FRENCHMEN FOR AMERICA.

Benjamin Franklin, the Wisest American of His Time.

FOREIGNERS WHO CAME OVER THE SEA TO HELP WASHINGTON WIN INDEPENDENCE.

Marquis de Lafayette.
Baron von Steuben.
Tadeusz Kosciuszko.
Casimir Pulaski.
Johann De Kalb.

THE MEN WHO CROSSED THE MOUNTAINS, DEFEATED THE INDIANS AND BRITISH, AND MADE THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER THE FIRST WESTERN BOUNDARY OF THE UNITED STATES.

Daniel Boone, the Hunter and Pioneer of Kentucky.
James Robertson and John Sevier, the Pioneers of Tennessee.
George Rogers Clark, the Hero of Vincennes.

THE PERIOD OF DEVELOPMENT AS A NATION

THE MEN WHO HELPED WASHINGTON START THE NEW GOVERNMENT.
- Alexander Hamilton, the Youngest of the Great Men of the Revolution and the Father of the Federalist Party.
- Thomas Jefferson, Who Wrote the Declaration of Independence, Founded the Democratic Party, and Purchased the Louisiana Territory.

HEROES OF THE WAR OF 1812.
- William Henry Harrison, the Victor at Tippecanoe and the Thames.
- Oliver Hazard Perry, the Victor in the Battle of Lake Erie.
- Andrew Jackson, the Victor of New Orleans.

THE THREE GREATEST STATESMEN OF THE MIDDLE PERIOD.
- Henry Clay, the Founder of the Whig Party, and the Great Pacificator.
- Daniel Webster, the Defender of the Constitution.
- John C. Calhoun, Champion of Nullification.

THE MEN WHO WON TEXAS, THE OREGON COUNTRY, AND CALIFORNIA.
- Sam Houston, the Hero of San Jacinto.
- Lewis and Clark. Finding the Way to the Oregon Country.
- John C. Fremont, the Pathfinder of the Rocky Mountains.

THE MEN WHO MADE THE NATION GREAT BY THEIR INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES.
- Robert Fulton, the Inventor of the Steamboat.
- Samuel F. B. Morse, Inventor of the Telegraph.
- Cyrus West Field, Who Laid the Atlantic Cable Between America and Europe.
- Thomas A. Edison, the Greatest Inventor of Electrical Machinery in the World.

THE MEN WHO SAVED THE UNION.
- Stephen A. Douglas, the Little Giant.
- Abraham Lincoln, the Liberator and Martyr.
- Ulysses S. Grant, the Great General of the Union Armies.

THE MAN WHO LED THE CONFEDERATE ARMIES.
- Robert Edward Lee.

THE MEN WHO FOUGHT SPAIN, CONQUERED THE PHILIPPINES, AND MADE CUBA FREE.
- George Dewey, the Hero of Manila Bay.
- The Capture of Cervera's Fleet.

**The Story of the Person before the Story of the Event.** Some historians, apparently without wide experience in public school work, have reversed the order given above. It has seemed fitting that the reasons for the study of the real historical individual should be set forth. 1. The story of the real character is not for the purpose of

teaching history alone, but for teaching morals as well. Hence the simple before the complex. The story of the person is simpler than the story of the event. The story of one person like Washington, Lee, or Lincoln is far simpler than the stories of a series of events made up by the coöperation of many individuals. 2. The story of the boyhood of Raleigh, Clay, or Edison delights the child in this stage of development. What they overcame as boys is a constant source of encouragement to the poor boy and awakens the admiration of the boy who is well to do. 3. In no other way can justice be done, oftentimes, to great men. Great men change their minds and are the greater for doing so. We must, therefore, see the whole life of the person. Patrick Henry was a hero of the Revolution. But the child's admiration is dampened when he sees him throw the whole weight of his great name against the Constitution. Did we not see him, in the campaign of 1798, recognize his error and come out strongly in support of Washington's administration? We should not miss the last great act of this noble man. 4. In this stage of the pupil's development, it is a pity that he should lose the great moral lessons historical biography has to teach. In no other line of study does this opportunity come to him as it does in biography.

ETHICAL VALUE OF HERO STUDY.

**Pioneer Stories.** The above outline of stories furnishes not only an illustration of a simple classification such as children in the 4th to 6th grades enjoy but furnishes to them the great names in American History. These names, it will be observed at a glance, are the ones belonging, for the most part, in the pioneer stage of development. The conditions under which they were born, amid which they were reared, and in which

they accomplished their work, were the plainest, simplest, and often the hardest, possible. The fact that the pupil sees the hard conditions out of which noble lives grow and witnesses the struggle upward in spite of obstacles, not only arouses admiration for the hero, but gives courage and vigor to his own resolutions. The story of such a character appeals to the child of the well to do as well as to the child of toil. The story excites admiration in the one and hope in the other.

**Nature of the Problem.** How to make the study of the historical person yield the most valuable results is a real problem. It would seem that no more powerful formative influence can take hold on the heart and mind of the pupil than a splendid heroic character. The life of the child grows toward the life he studies and admires. He will consciously strive to realize in his own conduct what attracts him in the conduct of his hero. No doubt the unconscious influence of such study is even greater than the conscious. It reaches into the life of the pupil in a way that eludes the teacher and parent,—both wonder where certain opinions and actions originate, without being able to discover the cause; even the pupil cannot explain it, for he is not conscious, in many instances, of following any one in his conduct.

Hero worship partly explains the attraction which youthful minds find in the cheap novel. Surely, the teacher should be as wise as the novelist, and may be wiser than some novelists, for in a measure the teacher may select the characters presented for study and moral guidance. In making this selection the teacher will be guided by the ethical welfare of the pupil, and will certainly not feed the young imagination and emotions upon abnormal examples of either goodness or wickedness;

and while it is no doubt wise that gentle, generous, noble, self-sacrificing, and patriotic characters should constitute the predominant themes for study, yet it remains true that real life for which the pupil is preparing will present many characters just the opposite of what it is possible to select for him from the pages of history. In the affairs of life it will be just as necessary for his own good and that of his country that he should courageously condemn the low and base as praise the noble and brave.

**How to Preserve a Balance.** Can hero study be made to stimulate, not only admiration for the good, but condemnation for the bad? In two ways, it seems to me, this result may be reached. First, by watching a hero in his struggle against the wrong. This increases admiration for the hero. Second, by presenting the opposite sort of hero now and then, so that the pupil's hatred for cowards, traitors, thieves and self-seekers may be strengthened, and his appreciation of the noble qualities of men may become stronger by seeing the evil results that flow from men of opposite character. Under certain limitations ignoble conduct excites greater respect and admiration for its opposite, and may cause the pupil to resolve to practice, and otherwise promote, the positive virtues. This can be successfully accomplished by the wise leadings of the teacher. Not much of the interpretation of the conduct of noble characters is necessary, for their lives speak a language directly to the heart; but the negative character, like Arnold or General Charles Lee, must be handled with more care. Their lives illustrate how persons of great ability in high places may be dominated by selfish ends and bring great injury upon themselves, their friends, and their country. But too many such cases weaken the pupil's

faith in human nature,—a most disastrous result for all concerned. For this reason, as well as for the truth of history the teacher must see that the positive rather than the negative hero should occupy the greater share of attention.

**Great Ethical Qualities.** Not all characters yield lessons of the heroic in the same degree. The wise teacher will not attempt to force either the story or the pupils. In this field of the moral the teacher must not appear to dominate the pupils, lest the suspicion be aroused that the teacher is trying to make goody goody children. Therefore, nothing should be done to urge them to follow the virtues of great men. A sensible degree of admiration can be expressed for these qualities without arousing either suspicion or opposition. On the whole, the concrete working out of a virtue bears its own lesson.

The leading virtues may be enumerated here with the hope that the teacher may have them in mind and point them out to the pupils as occasion may warrant: love of humanity, of country, mercy, honor, courage, steadfastness, and duty.

### THE TEACHER AS A STORY TELLER

The teacher of beginners should be a skillful story teller; especially is this true when the history story is to be told. Teachers who tell stories will generally observe the following points, consciously or unconsciously.

1. Every teacher cannot expect to be a trained historian, yet every teacher must be well read on the subject matter of the story she tells. Her knowledge must be accurate and sufficient.

2. With this matter as a basis she proceeds to construct an outline of her story, either on paper or

simply in her thought. The latter is probably sufficient if the teacher be an expert. In no case should an outline be used when telling the story.

3. The manner of telling the story is everything. The language and thought must be adapted to the pupil's grade of thinking,—otherwise the story will be a failure. The teacher's ability to make this adaptation is, in a large measure, the test of the teacher's success. This may consist in the choice of words or phrases or in painting a scene so vividly that pupils feel that they have stood in the very presence of the things talked about.

4. The story must flow right on—no hesitating, no stopping to pick up points omitted, but moving smoothly along. This does not mean that there are no stops in the story, but when there are they must not be due to a lack on the teacher's part, but must have been planned from the beginning. For instance, the teacher plans to stop at a given situation, for here is presented a problem for the pupils to solve. If they do not solve it now, the story will lose something for them. Such stops were not in mind when speaking of the movement of the story. The action in the story must keep right on.

5. The great story teller does not obtrude herself. Her personality is kept in the background. Her gestures, actions, facial expressions, must be few rather than many, and must be appropriate. Unless they contribute to the interest and effectiveness of the story they must not be used.

6. The teacher, deeply interested in her boys and girls, will dramatize simple scenes that lend themselves to such treatment. Boys and girls love to play at Indian games, a form of dramatization. They will be found to feel the same enthusiasm if the stories of various kinds be put into the form of a little play scene or scenes.

If well done, the interest will run high, and the pupils themselves will be found playing the scenes over again.

7. There has been so much reference to the ethical and moral element, to the conflict between individuals and ideas, that it is hardly more than necessary to mention this as one of the essential ideas that every teacher must bring out. In fact, the unobtrusive moral lesson is a prime purpose for which the story is told.

### THE ORAL AND THE WRITTEN STORY

**The General Problem.** The teacher must constantly bear in mind the great purpose of this period of school work, namely the transfer of the oral vocabulary of the pupil into a written one. This fact seems to suggest that the oral story predominates in the first three years of school life, while the written one should mark the work of the next three years—the fourth to the sixth grade, inclusive. The teacher who has time and who has great skill as a story teller will be likely to use the oral story longer than is indicated above, but the teacher who possesses neither time nor great skill will probably rely more upon the well-told written story in those early years.

**The Oral Story.** No one can doubt that the oral story presents many interesting features which may be called advantages. 1. The oral story comes, not as a stranger, but as something with which the child is more or less familiar. The stories of grandmother, mother, sister, or of Sunday School teacher serve as a sort of introduction to the stories at school. The story at this age, from six to nine, arouses the pupil's greatest interest, because the teacher, as we have already seen, can vary language and thought to suit his stage of development. It is, therefore, more elastic than the written story just where it counts for most. 2. The

teacher can make the story harder or easier, may appeal to the child's imagination, judgment, curiosity, power of invention, or to some characteristic form of feeling. 3. But the greatest advantage of the oral story over the written is in the facility with which the teacher may set problems for the pupils to solve.

**The Problem of the Oral Story.** History as well as mathematics is full of problems. The problem presented in the oral story is any condition, situation, or difficulty in the presence of which the teacher may stop the story and ask for a solution from the pupils. Pioneer stories, with their simple settings, furnish problems which call for the exercise of ingenuity, previous knowledge, or past experience of the pupils. In a small way, it puts the pupils on their mettle, and compels them to make use of previous knowledge and experience. They may blunder, but a blunder under effort is gain in power.

1. Daniel Boone, living in North Carolina, resolved to cross the mountains into Kentucky to see that land of marvel and beauty. Problem: "What ought he to have taken with him?" He finally reached Kentucky but did not dare to stay many nights in the same place. "Why?" After his return to North Carolina, he decided, in company with other families, to move to that wonderful country. They crossed the mountains, and built a fort to protect themselves from the Indians. One day, Boone's daughter and a companion were stolen by the Indians. Boone raised a party, pursued the Indians, and finally saw them getting ready to spend the night. "How shall they rescue their daughters?"

Any oral story has a number of problems which may be set for the pupils. Their solution will furnish the children with intense pleasure, and will give them skill in putting meaning into action.

**The Advantages of the Written Story.** In presenting the story to the last of the first three grades, the wise teacher will try out her pupils in their ability to read with ease the parts or the whole of the written story. This trial not only makes the pupil gradually acquainted with the written story, but has a tendency to make the pupils independent of the teacher. A second advantage is offered in the written story: It opens up a wider field of endeavor to the children. They become acquainted with many characters and with the events in which these heroes participate. In a sense the children cut loose from the dependence on the teacher's story and are now seeking for themselves. This feeling of independence brings its own enjoyment.

But a third reason may now be cited: The written story, too, offers problems. Perhaps not so many as does the oral story, but as many as the pupils will find time to solve. There are myriads of relations which the story cannot stop to make clear or even to suggest. This is true even of the history of several volumes. The only need is that the teacher shall be historian enough to see the relation or fact that lies just below the surface and be able to set the problem in the form of a question. Magellan, in his great voyage around the world, passed the first winter on the coast of Patagonia. He found winter beginning with Easter and ending with August. How is this to be explained? (Mace's Primary History, p. 22.) In marching to Mexico, the men of Cortes could hardly keep their hands off the gold and silver ornaments worn by the natives. Why were the Spaniards so hungry for gold? (Mace's Primary History, p. 25.) Why should the settlers at Jamestown be afraid of the Spaniards? What does it mean that William Brewster gave up his chance at the court of Queen Elizabeth to become one

of the Pilgrims? How many times did William Penn stand at the parting of the ways and hold on to his Quaker ideas? (Mace's Primary History, paragraph 63.) What made La Salle build a fort at Starved Rock? (Mace's Primary History, p. 129.) Of what use was it to George Washington, as a growing lad, to learn the ways of a backwoodsman?

A fourth point may be made in regard to the written story. It has been claimed by the partisans of the oral story that the written one is an excuse for all sorts of bad teaching. We have the right to assume that the teacher of a written story is as good as the teacher of the oral story. Would such a teacher permit her pupils in dealing with the written story to fall into the habit of committing to memory the story? Why should she, when there are plenty of problems waiting for solution?

## European-American History

### Sixth Grade

**Nature and Purpose.** Whether or not we agree with the idea that we have come to the place where we must study European history, we must hold that some features of that history ought to be studied in order to understand American history. What part of European history helps to an understanding of American history? All of it, or certain parts of it? Perhaps the teacher of European history and the teacher of American history would answer the question differently. But the teacher in the grades is no more a teacher of history than she is of arithmetic or geography. Hence it is fair to assume that she will insist on reducing European history to a minimum, because her great object is training for citizenship—for living in an American community. She would naturally recall that other subjects and other

history are vitally connected with the child's every day institutional environment. Whatever makes for the pupil's mastery of his environment is of first consequence to her. The effect of all the pupil studies is to socialize himself. Whatever of European history he studies in this year must have some practical bearing on making him master of his environment.

If this be true, then that portion of European history bearing on American history is the field from which material is to be drawn. This field is a narrow one, for we must remember that pupils at eleven years of age are not men and women of mature judgment and of profound convictions, but are boys and girls of keen imagination, rather immature judgment, and with emotions that need guidance.

**A Brief Outline of Related European History.** Such a course must be, in the light of the facts, only tentative. Many teachers will prefer to carry further than the fifth grade their study of heroes and leaders in American history.

PREPARING THE WAY

I. WHERE AMERICANS WERE BORN.
   1. Some in this country.
   2. Others in Europe—a few in Asia.
   3. A list of the countries in which the parents or grandparents were born. Find the countries on the map.

II. HOW THE PEOPLE CAME.
   1. Perhaps some child can tell the story.
   2. Blue prints of immigrant ship, crowds landing and, by way of contrast, show cut of Mayflower, Hudson's Halfmoon, and so on.

III. WHEN AMERICA WAS UNKNOWN TO THE WHITE MAN.
   1. How the world looked when Christ was born,—a map showing peoples around the Mediterranean, and some spots in Asia and Africa.
   2. What the people thought of the size and shape of the world.

IV. WHAT THE WORLD HAD BY WAY OF INVENTIONS.
   1. Make a list of modern inventions.
   2. Inventions of the time of Columbus.
   3. Inventions before the time of Columbus.

## THE PEOPLE CALLED THE GREEKS

I. GREEK STORIES WE HAVE HEARD.
   1. Have a Greek boy tell famous deeds done long ago.
   2. Teacher may read or tell a story from the Iliad or the Odyssey.

II. WHAT THE GREEK BOY DID.
   1. Went to School. What he studied.
   2. Spent time in the gymnasium.
   3. Attended the great national games.

III. MEN WHO CARRIED WAYS OF LIVING TO OTHER LANDS.
   1. Sailors and ships carried commerce on the Mediterranean.
   2. Alexander the Great, who went eastward.
   3. Colonists, who settled eastward and westward.

IV. WHAT WE GET FROM THE GREEKS.
   1. Sculpture, architecture, alphabet, and so on.
   2. Show blue prints of Athens, the Acropolis, Parthenon.
   3. Show blue prints of famous sculpture.

## THE PEOPLE CALLED THE ROMANS

I. ROMANS WE HAVE HEARD ABOUT.
   1. Have an Italian boy tell the story of Romulus and Remus, Horatius, Cincinnatus, and Julius Cæsar.
   2. Blue prints of Rome, the city.

II. STORY OF THE CONQUESTS OF JULIUS CÆSAR.

III. ROME AND CHRISTIANITY.
   1. A time of peace when it began.
   2. Christ and St. Paul.
   3. Persecution of the early Christians.
   4. Roman emperor becomes Christian — Constantine.

IV. NATIONS COMING OUT OF ROME — ITALIANS, FRENCH, AND SPANIARDS.

V. WHAT WE GET FROM ROME.

## THE PEOPLE CALLED THE TEUTONS

I. GERMANS WE HEAR ABOUT.
   1. Have a German tell the stories of the early Teutons and the modern Germans. Frederick, the Great and Bismarck (blue prints).
   2. How the early Germans conquered Rome.
   3. How the Anglo-Saxons conquered England.
   4. How the modern Germans have scattered over the world.

II. THE EARLY ENGLISH.
   1. Tales of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table.
   2. Story of King Alfred and the Danes (blue prints of Vikings and Norse ship).

III. ENGLISHMEN OF THE MIDDLE AGES.
  1. Begin to win their liberties.
    (a) King John a bad king.
    (b) The Great Charter and the barons.
  2. How men lived.
    (a) In the towns and on feudal estates. Towns and farmers of the modern world.
    (b) The church and the people.
  3. What Germans and Anglo-Saxons give us.

## CRUSADES SWEEP ALL EUROPE

I. PILGRIMAGES TO THE HOLY LAND.
  1. Beginnings of travel.
  2. Trouble with the Turks.

II. THE CRUSADES OR RELIGIOUS WARS.
  1. The Story of Peter the Hermit.
  2. The capture of Jerusalem.
  3. Richard the Lion-hearted.
  4. Effects of the Crusades on travel and trade, on cities like Genoa, Venice, London (blue prints).
  5. What Europe learned from the Crusades.

## DISCOVERY OF THE WESTERN WORLD

I. THE NORSEMEN, "LEIF THE LUCKY," (blue prints) Mace's Primary History, pp. 1–3.

II. STORY OF MARCO POLO. Mace's Primary History, pp. 3–7.

III. PRINCE HENRY AND THE PORTUGUESE.

IV. THE STORY OF COLUMBUS. Mace's Primary History, pp. 8–20.
  1. Early life and difficulties.
  2. The voyages of Columbus.

V. THE MEN WHO DID WHAT COLUMBUS FAILED TO DO. Mace's Primary History, pp. 21–41.
  1. Magellan, who sailed round the world.
  2. Cortés, and Pizarro who discovered rich cities.
  3. The men who failed to find rich cities — Coronado and De Soto.

VI. THE PEOPLE WHO MADE AMERICA KNOWN TO ENGLISHMEN AND WHO CHECKED THE POWER OF SPAIN. Mace's Primary History, pp. 42–54.
  1. John Cabot, searching for shorter route to India, finds the mainland of North America.
  2. Elizabeth the Queen, who made England strong and great.
  3. Story of Sir Francis Drake, who sailed the Spanish main and singed the King of Spain's beard.
  4. Story of Sir Walter Raleigh, the friend of Queen Elizabeth, who planted a colony in America to check the king of Spain.

OTHER RIVALS OF SPAIN

I. FRANCE AND THE FRENCHMEN IN AMERICA. Mace's Primary History, pp. 116–119.
   1. Jacques Cartier.
   2. Coligny's Colony in Florida.
   3. Samuel de Champlain.

II. HOLLAND AND THE DUTCH.
   1. William the Silent, A Dutch Hero.
   2. Story of Hudson. Mace's Primary History, pp. 95–104.

THE SEVENTH AND EIGHTH GRADES

**The Story of the Event.** During the first five or six years of school life we have been mainly concerned with the story of a person, sometimes the product of the imagination and at others a real historical person. At times, during the sixth year, we were compelled to move over to the story of an event. The difference between the two types of stories is largely a difference of emphasis. In the one story the great individual stands out and takes precedence over every other thing; it is what he does and says that concerns the story. In the other case the great man sinks in importance. He is now one among many engaged in the action, though perhaps the most important. The event is looked upon as groups of men performing deeds. What is meant by the story of the event? By this we mean such a narration and description of an event that one hearing or reading it pictures it as though he saw the action taking place.

The event as an external thing is an action. It has the qualities of a thing physical and appeals to the senses as if it had been seen, heard, and felt by one who took part in it. As a physical object it occupies time and space while occurring. The people who took part in it can be counted. The action takes a given physical form, a convention, a marching army, or a howling mob. By virtue of these physical characters we can picture it in

imagination. Without this aid the picture would be impossible, and without the picture how could we get hold of the meaning of the event?

### THE OBJECTS OF THE STORY OF THE EVENT

Immediately, with respect to knowledge, one object in view is to give the pupil possession of the picture side of the leading events of American history, so that he may know how American history appeared to the people who made it, and at the same time have some appreciation of their thoughts and feelings. Pictures of events may not be a high form of historical knowledge, but they certainly do enrich the mind of the possessor. They give to it not only richness of imagery, but a variety that confers life and elasticity. The very presence of imaged events must make the mind vastly more fertile than it would otherwise be, and will give it the power of self-employment and self-entertainment. There is a vast difference between young persons who have abundant mental resources and those whose minds are empty. To give the young people the power to call up in brilliant and imposing review the procession of events from the beginning of American history to the present day is a task worthy of the highest pedagogical skill, especially when one thinks of the consequences which may flow from it.

At the beginning of this form of the story, emphasis is put on the picturable side of events; but the study of their meaning must not be neglected. Although the pupil is able to get more picture than meaning, yet he must get all of the latter his ability will allow. The simpler forms of thought and sentiment of individuals and groups are now possible to him and will add interest and value to the work. However, as the pupil moves through this field, the teacher should gradually shift the emphasis

to the side of the event's content till this feature dominates the work. The transition should be so gradual as to be unconscious to the pupil and in no way diminish his efforts in gathering picturable material for the recitation. The lessons may still be assigned in terms of the external features of the event, but the recitation should call for the pupil's effort to find the event's simpler relations and significance.

On the side of mind, the immediate purpose of this sort of story-making is to train the imagination—to give it power and facility in performing its functions. No richer opportunity of cultivating the sensuous imagination will ever come to the pupil; no other subject will furnish it more exercise than this phase of history.

Remotely, the purpose here is to prepare for the beginnings of that form of history work in which the processes and products of the understanding are the characteristic features. This portion of the story side of history forms a natural transition to the reflective or logical phase. In the first place, it deals with the same individual facts and events; and, in the second place, the action of the judgment in the form of inference comes into play as a constantly growing factor. The remarks already made concerning the dependence of the advanced form of history work upon the picture form of it had particular reference to the picture side of the event. Both the unfolding mental life of the pupil and the relation of dependence between the phases of history work demand that the teacher shall look beyond this particular form to the higher one toward which the pupil is moving, and that the present work shall be constantly modified to meet these more remote ends. It requires little effort to see the great gain to the pupils in the seventh and eighth grades who have covered the leading events of American history in this way when they come to the more thoughtful work.

### THE MATERIAL FOR THE STORY OF THE EVENT

There need be little discussion as to where appropriate material is to be found. It is abundant all along the way, from the discovery of America to our day. It will be safe generally to follow the order of events as presented in some good text on American history. While the sequence of events is now to have weight, yet the teacher is not to try to cover each of the events by a story, but rather is to make a selection of events determined partly by their importance and partly by the ease with which the facts permit of this kind of treatment. But so far as the materials for the story are concerned, the ordinary text furnishes little more than a dry outline. In most cases it is not adapted to this sort of work. Generally it is a skeleton narrative, while it ought to be narrative-descriptive, not only exhibiting to the imagination interesting movements of men and events, but also presenting an abundance of concrete acts and other details, which reveal, to some extent, the thoughts and feelings behind them. On the other hand, it is no uncommon mistake for history text-books to do too much for the pupil by giving what he ought to discover by interpretation. The pupil is thus deprived of his right to think out for himself what he is easily capable of doing, and what he must be allowed to do, if he is to get growth out of this subject. Instead of permitting independent effort, the text-book often gives him a ready-made solution, as would be said in arithmetic, and his only apparent work is to memorize it and give it back to the teacher in the memorized and unassimilated form. Such a text-book deprives the teacher and the pupil of the opportunity of setting and solving problems in history. Lacking this stimulus, she assigns the lesson in terms of paragraphs and pages instead of content.

**Illustration and Method of Work.** An example of the story side of the event will explain more fully its nature and purpose, and at the same time illustrate the method to be employed. Let us take the Boston Tea Party. This presupposes that the pupil has dealt in like manner with the Stamp Act, the Congress of 1765, the Boston Massacre, and other related acts. The pupil must look, as it were, on the Boston Tea Party, and see it as it occurred. If the teacher has the power to make him feel the jostle of the crowd and hear the voices of the multitude so vividly that he loses himself for the time being, so much the better. This result can be brought about by a word picture of the event.

Early one morning, in the middle of December, 1773, on the roads leading to Boston, for a distance of twenty miles around, were seen men singly and in groups making their way to town. Let us look at these people. They are engaged in earnest conversation; some of them shake their heads and fists. As the distance grows shorter, people are on foot; the numbers increase till it seems that all the country villages are emptying their people, on that cold day, into Boston. As they approach the city they find it all astir; the shops and stores are closed; men are gathered in groups discussing the question whether the tea shall be landed or not; messengers are running to and fro over the city, and a general movement toward the "Old South Meeting-House" is noticed. There, at ten o'clock, the vast crowd assembles to hear the answer of the owner of one of the vessels, whether he will take his cargo of tea back to England. The meeting organizes by the election of a Moderator, and Mr. Rotch, the vessel owner, tells the meeting that the collector of the port refuses to let him go back with his tea; the meeting then orders him to hurry to the governor and get his

permission to pass by the guns of Castle William. While the anxious owner goes in search of the governor, who has stolen away to his country seat to avoid the crowds, the great mass meeting adjourns till the afternoon.

At three o'clock, all the town tried to get into the "Old South Meeting-House," crowding its seats and galleries, standing in its aisles and around the entrance, — seven thousand people tried to hear and see what was said and done. Great enthusiasm was excited when one speaker asked "how tea would taste in salt water," and another said: "Now the hand is to the plough, there must be no looking back." Closest attention was given to the earnest advice of Josiah Quincy, as he counseled moderation and prophesied of the great struggle near at hand. Samuel Adams, of course, was listened to in that winter's afternoon. Night came on and lights were brought in, but no answer was at hand from the governor, and yet the people waited. There was a feeling, "as the cold night darkened about, that the last scene was about to be enacted." At 6.15 Rotch came in and told the breathless audience that the governor would not let the tea go back. Samuel Adams arose and said: "This meeting can do nothing more to save the country." This seemed to be a signal, for immediately the war-whoop of the "Mohawks" startled the audience; it was answered from the galleries; the whole audience shouted its approval, poured out into the street and noisily followed the "Mohawks" to the wharf. See the Indians clamber over the sides of the vessel; whooping and brandishing their tomahawks, they rush down to the hold and up come the boxes of tea — two hundred and forty of them — which are thrown into the sea. The work was hardly done before the swift couriers were hastening with the news to leading Massachusetts towns. All New

England was thrilled by the news as it sped by one means or another from province to province. On the next day, Paul Revere, the courier of the Revolution, rode away to New York and Philadelphia to carry the tidings of that day's work. At every farmhouse, village, or city he told the story. There was great rejoicing, ringing of bells, bonfires, speeches, toasts,—and all in honor of the patriots of Boston. Philadelphia had two meetings in celebration of the event, and the last one, attended by five thousand people, sent a vote of thanks to the Bostonians. The news was carried far to the southward, and even from the Carolinas came back words of approbation and good will.

After a fashion, the above paragraph indicates the kind of word-pictures the pupil should find in a text-book. What shall the pupil do with this sort of material? In the first place, he should not commit the language. In the second place, if the teacher wishes the pupil to solve the problem before the recitation, the lesson will be assigned in terms of the thoughts and feelings of the people; while, if the teacher wishes the solution to be thought out in the class, the lesson will be assigned in terms of the picture. To accomplish the latter purpose, the teacher assigns the lesson about as follows: 1. Read the story of the Tea Party till you can see, with your eyes shut, the acts of the people from beginning to end. 2. Tell the number of great scenes in the picture, and describe the acts of the people in each scene. These directions will prepare the pupil for the real struggle that comes in the recitation,—the passing by inference from the deeds of the people to their thoughts and feelings. But if the former plan is pursued, the directions may take a form like the following: 1. What conclusions can you draw from seeing so many country people on their way to Boston at the same time? Prove your answer from their acts. 2. How were the

people of the town feeling over the question of the tea? Give reasons. 3. What is the meaning of the meeting of the country and town people together, hearing and applauding the same speeches, voting the same resolutions, and participating in the destruction of the tea? 4. Did not the persons who destroyed the tea feel guilty of wrong-doing? Prove your answer. 5. Why was the news carried so quickly to the Massachusetts and other New England towns? 6. Why was Paul Revere sent to New York and Philadelphia with the news of the Tea Party, and what is the meaning of the responses that greeted him and the people of Boston? 7. Did the governor of Massachusetts agree with the people? Prove your answer. 8. What do you infer as to the effect of the work of the Tea Party on England? Why?

These questions, or others of a similar import, should be put to the class before or during the recitation. If used in assigning the lesson, they will force the pupil to go through the language to the ideas expressed — will force him to go down below the surface play of events into the hearts and minds of the people. This would cause the pupil to study and re-study the story of the event, and would, no doubt, leave him in possession of as full a picture of the scene as if the lesson had been assigned in terms of the picture. How many of these questions can the pupil answer? Nearly, if not quite, all of them. How many can he find formally answered in the above sketch? He ought to find none. Suppose the text should indicate somewhat in detail the answers to these questions. What difference would it make to the pupil? All the difference between the work of an active, sharpened judgment and the monotonous grind of the memory! Why not give the pupil an opportunity to think a little in history?

It will be noted that in this transition phase attention is

being directed to the content of the acts put forth. Now, while this is still Story work, yet the work of stimulating the historical judgment must be kept in mind and must become more and more prominent as the student grows stronger through discipline and knowledge.

STORY OF THE EVENT, OR WORD-PICTURES TAKEN FROM MACE'S SCHOOL HISTORY

**35. The First Representative Assembly in America (1619).** On July 30th, Governor Yeardley and his council of advisers, together with the burgesses, met in the little wooden church at Jamestown, organized the General Assembly of Virginia, and began the work of self-government on this continent. The picture is worth remembering. The governor and his council, keeping their hats on, took the front seats, while the burgesses occupied those in the rear. The session was opened with prayer by the clergyman, after which each member took the oath. A speaker, his clerk, and a sergeant were elected and sat facing the assembly. Some members, not having been regularly elected, were dismissed.[1] The instructions which the company had given Yeardley were brought in and read, in order to see whether there was in them "any law pressing or binding too hard — because this great Charter is to bind us and our heirs forever."

**83. Fall of Andros.** One day the commander of the war vessel which was stationed in Boston Harbor came on shore. The ship carpenters who were collected on

[1] Most of these were English customs. The members of the House of Commons still sit with their hats on, a custom which probably once signified the equality of its members, but which is now kept up because the English like to preserve old and quaint ways. The Commons still have their Speaker, who does not speak much, but who acts as a kind of chairman and wears a wig instead of a hat. The Burgesses imitated the Commons in having a secretary and a sergeant, in taking an oath, and in exercising the right to dismiss members.

the pier arrested him. Great excitement followed; the sheriff tried to stop it, but the crowd arrested him, too. The boys of the town gathered with clubs in their hands drums beat the alarm, signal fires blazed on Beacon Hill, and Andros and his officers fled to the fort.

The former governor, Bradstreet, now appeared, and the people gave a mighty shout. A committee of safety was appointed and Boston was ready to fight for its liberties. A thousand soldiers gathered at Charlestown, and the next day hundreds of men from the country, headed by a schoolmaster, came swarming in to the city to fight. The governor's castle was taken, the warship captured, and the forts seized. Andros surrendered, and New England was again free.

**128. Rent Day on the Hudson.** On the great estates owned by the patroons, events took place which were seen nowhere else in the colonies. The patroon's house, usually made of brick or stone, was of great size, often three stories high. The rooms were many and large, and frequently finely decorated. The furniture and the diamond-shaped windows spoke of great wealth. Around the mansion ran wide, well-cared-for walks lined with beautiful shrubbery. Farther away lay the gardens and the orchards, sometimes extending down to the Hudson. Near by stood the great barns where the grain was stored and where horses and cattle found comfortable quarters. Nearer still were the plainer houses for the white and the black servants belonging to the patroon. How like the estate of some European lord all this appears!

Once or twice a year rent day came around. Then all the small farmers living on the patroon's vast estate gathered with rent money in their pockets, and in their wagons they brought the patroon's share of what they had raised. It was a holiday and every farmer and his

family were dressed in their best clothes. A great feast was prepared. An ox, sheep, and pigs had been roasted. Dozens of servants, white and black, hastened to and fro, waiting upon the people, who ate, drank, and made merry. Everybody declared that the patroon was a kind-hearted man. But when the farmers went to their homes to begin again their hard labor, they could not help wishing that the farms were their own and that they did not have to pay rent.

**147. When the Great Ship Came to the Planter's Door.** The southern planters, when possible, selected their homes on some river and near the sea. This made it easy to travel from plantation to plantation or from colony to colony, and enabled the annual ship from London to land at the planter's own wharf. For weeks everybody talked of the coming of the ship, of news from friends, and of the fine clothes and furniture it would bring fresh from their old English homes.

How all "hands" worked to get the tobacco and other products ready for the great vessel! What stir and excitement as the ship first came into view, sailing up the river! What joy it brought to every one! Good news from the old home; letters, presents, and perhaps some long absent friend! Then came the work and noise of unloading what the planter had bought, and of loading what he had to sell. While all this bustle was going on, the planter and his family were entertaining, in true plantation style, the officers of the ship, and settling up accounts and giving orders for the next year.

**202. The First Continental Congress (1774).** In this spirit the First Continental Congress met in Carpenters' Hall, Philadelphia. It was the greatest meeting of great Americans yet held. They came from all the colonies except Georgia. Some of them were acquainted

through correspondence; others were known from their writings; but most of them had never met face to face.

Here Samuel Adams, author of the "Circular Letter," met Richard Henry Lee of Virginia, and they became lifelong friends. Here, too, was John Dickinson of Pennsylvania, writer of the "Farmer's Letters" which all the members had read. Patrick Henry and John Adams, the two great orators of the Revolution, listened to each other for the first time, and Roger Sherman of Connecticut, who had once learned the shoe-maker's trade, was welcomed by the Rutledges, who were proud planters from South Carolina.

George Washington, the man to lead their armies, was there. Men of all sorts of religious opinions were gathered in Carpenters' Hall — Congregationalists, Presbyterians, Huguenots, Episcopalians, Baptists, and Quakers. Nevertheless, these men were resolved to do everything they could to unite the colonists against England.

**218. The Victory at Trenton (1776).** Lord Cornwallis, leading Howe's advance, had followed hard upon the heels of Washington to Trenton. The British could not cross the Delaware, for Washington had destroyed all the boats within reach. Cornwallis stationed his forces at different places along the river and then returned to New York to share in the Christmas festivities.

Washington quickly saw his opportunity. It was Christmas night. The Hessian soldiers stationed in Trenton had been feasting and drinking all day, as was their custom. The weather was bitter cold, and snow and sleet were falling. "Surely," thought the half-tipsy Hessian sentinels, "it is of no use to watch. There can be no danger such a night as this."

But if they had listened they might have heard the

tramp of marching feet and the rumble of wheels. Washington and his men had crossed the Delaware amid the floating ice, and were pressing forward to Trenton. Their feet left bloodstains on the snow and their ragged clothes could not keep out the cold. Two poor fellows were frozen to death. But the little army never faltered. It was the last chance for liberty.

At daybreak the attack began. The sleepy Hessians were aroused from their beds, but it was too late. A few volleys, a wild charge, and all was over. One thousand of the enemy surrendered with all their cannon and supplies. It was one of Washington's most famous victories.

**238. Paul Jones and His Great Sea Fight. (1779).** But the greatest American triumph on the sea came through the skill and courage of Paul Jones. During 1778, in his little ship, the "Ranger," he spread terror among the seaports of the British Isles themselves. Now he dashed in and burned shipping; now he pounced upon some vessel carrying the English flag, and now was off to France out of harm's way.

In 1779, by the aid of Franklin, Jones obtained a fleet of five vessels in France and sailed around the north of Scotland and down the eastern coast to Flamborough Head. Here his flagship, the "Bon Homme Richard,"[1] met an English frigate, the "Serapis." They closed in deadly conflict, which raged far into the night. Paul Jones lashed the two vessels together, and no escape was possible for either. Some of his heaviest guns exploded, and his main deck was covered with dead and dying. The British vessel had lost nearly half her men. She

[1] The "Good Man Richard," so named as a compliment to Franklin, whose *Poor Richard's Almanac* was famous for its quaint sayings.

caught fire and her brave crew left their guns to battle with the flames. The "Bon Homme Richard" was not only on fire, but was filling with water. Still Jones fought on until the British captain surrendered. Thus, all at once, the "haughty mistress of the seas" had been humbled and the American flag had been raised in the estimation of the world.

**250. Washington Bids His Comrades Farewell.** When the British army evacuated New York (November 25, 1783) Washington took possession. He met his assembled generals for the last time. The parting of the men from the commander whom they had followed through the long, bitter struggle was deeply touching. Addressing them, Washington said: "With heart full of love and gratitude, I now take leave of you. I most devoutly wish that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy as your former ones have been glorious and honorable. I cannot come to each of you to take my leave, but shall be obliged if each one of you will come and take me by the hand." In turn, he shook each officer affectionately by the hand and embraced him. Not a word was spoken. All then silently followed him to Whitehall Ferry. Having entered the waiting barge, he turned to the company, and, waving his hat, bade them a silent adieu.

**251. Washington Resigns and Retires to Mount Vernon.** Washington journeyed to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, to resign his office as commander-in-chief of the American army. The governor and other state officers of Maryland, with certain military officers and ladies and gentlemen of high standing, were present by invitation. The galleries were crowded. As was customary, the members of Congress sat with their hats on, to show their sovereign authority. The visitors

all stood with uncovered heads during the ceremony.

Washington arose and addressed the president of the Congress: "The great events on which my resignation depended, having at length taken place, I have now the honor . . . to surrender into their (Congress's) hands the trust committed to me, and to claim the indulgence of retiring from the service of my country. Having now finished the work assigned me, I retire, . . . bidding an affectionate farewell to this august body. . . . I here offer my commission and take my leave of all the employments of public life."

Refusing to accept any reward for his long years of hard service, Washington hastened to Mount Vernon, his stately home which still stands on the banks of the Potomac not far from the city of Washington, to enjoy once more with his family and friends the delights of the Christmas time. He was now indeed, as everybody felt,

> "The first, the last, the best,
> The Cincinnatus[1] of the West."

**270. Rejoicing Over the Victory (1788).** When nine states had ratified the Constitution, the people knew the victory was won, and the friends of the "New Roof," as the Constitution was called, showed their joy. Cannon boomed, bonfires blazed, and processions filled the streets.

But nowhere were the people happier over the result than in Philadelphia. The good news that the "Old Dominion" had ratified the Constitution made the people of Philadelphia resolve to celebrate the Fourth of July in grand style. Salutes were fired at sunrise. The bells in the city rang their noisy welcome as five thousand

[1] Cincinnatus was a great Roman general who left his plow for the war and, after he had won his victories, laid down his arms and returned to his farm.

people gathered in line for the parade. "Every trade, every business, every occupation of life was represented." When the procession ended, James Wilson, who had been one of the great defenders of the Constitution, delivered an oration. The rejoicing continued far into the night.

This was a fitting celebration of the greatest event of the American Revolution by a city which had witnessed the meeting of the Congress of 1774, the Declaration of Independence, and the Constitutional Convention.

While the people are rejoicing over the new Constitution and are electing Washington to be their first President, we may take a closer look at the condition of the country after its long period of agitation and revolution.

**316. Victories on the Sea; The "Constitution" Captures the "Guerriere."** Little was expected from our navy. England laughed at the "fir-built things," and made sport of our "gridiron" flag. But a great surprise was in store for the world when the American frigate "Constitution" met the "Guerriere" off the Gulf of St. Lawrence (1812). At the call of the fife and drum every man on the American vessel ran to his post. The sailors climbed into the rigging, the gunners double-loaded their cannon, and the powder boys ran for supplies of ammunition. Muskets and pistols were placed near at hand, and sand was scattered over the deck.

The "Guerriere" had already opened fire, but Captain Hull of the "Constitution" waited till within pistol shot of the enemy. Then he fired a whole broadside. A British mast fell! The ships now came close together and the American sailors tried to tie them fast. Both crews prepared to "board" and fight it out hand to hand, but the ships drifted apart. The noise of the cannon, the

constant crack of muskets, the loud commands of officers, the shrieks of the wounded, the clouds of smoke, the powder-stained faces of the gunners, all joined to make an awful scene.

As the two vessels parted, the remaining masts of the "Guerriere" fell. With great holes torn in her side she lay a helpless wreck, and soon "struck" her flag to the "Constitution." Captain Hull carried his prisoners to Boston and received a rousing reception from the people. Salutes were fired, swords voted, resolutions passed, and bonfires burned to testify the people's joy.

**333. The Canal.** When steamboats from New Orleans, laden with European goods, began to supply the Western settlers, Eastern merchants became alarmed and called on Congress to build canals between the East and the West. Congress refused, because the majority believed that the Constitution gave them no power to appropriate money for such improvements, and the work was left for states to undertake.

New York acted promptly. The Erie Canal, from Buffalo through the center of the state to Albany, was planned, and work upon it was begun in 1817, under the enthusiastic leadership of Governor De Witt Clinton. Many men thought it impossible to build the canal, and ridiculed it as "Clinton's Big Ditch." It was a great undertaking for that day. The canal crossed swamps, rivers, hills, and valleys, and was three hundred and sixty-three miles long, forty feet wide, and four feet deep. The depth was later increased to seven feet.

In the autumn of 1825, when the waters of Lake Erie poured into the canal, the news was told to New York City by the firing of cannon placed five miles apart along the whole distance. Governor Clinton and other distinguished men with a "fleet" of canal boats began a

triumphal voyage from Lake Erie to the Atlantic. Celebrations marked their progress, and wherever an important road crossed the canal, the farmers and villagers for miles around gathered to witness this strange voyage. On November 4th, with the ringing of bells and the firing of cannon in the city and surrounded by a fleet, Governor Clinton emptied kegs of water from Lake Erie into the ocean, to signify that the Great Lakes and the Atlantic Ocean were forever united.

**353. The Campaign of 1840.** The distress caused by the panic and the unpopularity of Van Buren worked to the advantage of the Whig party. In 1837 the Ohio Whig convention nominated General William Henry Harrison for the Presidency. In 1838 thousands upon thousands greeted him upon his famous battlefield of Tippecanoe. Later, the Whig national convention at Harrisburg (1840) made him its candidate, and this action was ratified shortly after by a national convention of young Whigs.

A campaign more enthusiastic and more exciting than even the Jackson campaigns was thus opened. Harrison was a popular hero. He had lived on the frontier in a log cabin whose "latchstring was always out." He had beaten the Indians, and had overwhelmed Proctor and Tecumseh on Canadian soil. He was now a plain farmer living in Ohio, and was the people's candidate. Van Buren, on the other hand, was called the "little aristocrat." It was said that he had always held office, and lived in a "palace" and ridden in a fine carriage, while the laborer was without work and the business man was a bankrupt.

Such demonstrations, processions and barbecues had not yet been seen, nor had so many great orators ever before been heard in a campaign. But the Democrats

had no orators equal to Clay and Webster, and no campaign songs as stirring as those of the Whigs. The Whigs further aroused the patriotic sentiment of the country by holding meetings on battlefields. The largest was the Bunker Hill jubilee. More than one hundred thousand people, many of them from distant states, joined in the demonstration.

A Van Buren paper sneeringly said that if General Harrison were given a log cabin and a barrel of cider he would gladly give up his wish to be President and remain in Ohio. The Whigs immediately adopted these two objects as party emblems, and from that time on the log cabin and the barrel of cider became powerful arguments in favor of Harrison. The election gave the Whigs their first great victory.

**379. The Webster-Hayne Debate (1830).** The fight against the tariff began in earnest when Vice-President Calhoun sent a long argument, called the "South Carolina Exposition," to the legislature of that state, declaring that the Constitution is only an agreement between the states as equal partners, and that any state may nullify an unconstitutional act of Congress (1828).

Senator Hayne, a distinguished son of South Carolina, in a speech in the Senate, made a brilliant defense of the doctrine of nullification, and severely attacked New England. Men again thought the Union in danger, and Daniel Webster felt called on to reply. On the day set for the reply the Senate overflowed. There was not even standing room on the floor or in the galleries. People had come from distant cities, and "grave Senators were lost in the crowd of ladies."

How grand was the scene when Webster arose! With his massive forehead towering above deep-set but powerful eyes; with broad shoulders and a commanding voice,

Webster stood forth, a striking figure. All paid closest attention, while he spoke for hours, linking his arguments into a chain that could not easily be broken. It is one of the great speeches in the English language, and "will live as long as the Union itself." Its closing words, "Liberty and union, now and forever, one and inseparable," went ringing throughout the land, and have become the ruling sentiment of the American people. In this debate Webster won the proud title of "The Defender of the Constitution."

**416. The Lincoln-Douglas Debates and Their Effect.** Lincoln challenged Douglas to debate the questions of the day before the people of Illinois. Douglas accepted, and during that summer seven "joint debates" were held in different towns. From miles and miles around the people came on foot, on horseback, in wagons, and on trains to hear the burning questions discussed by the two ablest debaters in Illinois.

What a difference in the two men as they appeared on the platform! Douglas was short and squarely built. He spoke rapidly and powerfully, and carried his hearers by storm. He loved a hand-to-hand fight, and was the greatest off-hand debater in America. Lincoln was tall, slender and awkward. He spoke slowly and calmly. His language was always simple, and often quaint and humorous. His plain, unpretending manner won its way to the hearts of the people. He was the one man Douglas feared.

Lincoln arranged his arguments and put his questions on slavery so that Douglas by his answers was compelled either to please the people of Illinois and displease the people of the South, or to please the South and displease his own neighbors.

As a result of the debate, Douglas lost the support of

the South but won the senatorship. Lincoln, at the end of the campaign, was a man of national reputation, and invitations to speak in the cities of the East came to him. He had made himself a candidate for the Presidency.

**459. Pickett's Charge.** Concealed from view by the forest on the slopes of Seminary Ridge, General Lee, on July 3d, massed the flower of his army for a last desperate assault upon the Union center. At midday occurred a fearful artillery duel; Lee was trying to silence Meade's guns. While the clouds of smoke rolled away, fifteen thousand Confederates, formed like a vast wedge and led by General Pickett, were seen moving across the valley. Nearly a mile away the Union forces under Hancock were viewing the onrushing lines of gray. Half the distance was passed when the Union artillery blazed forth. Great holes were torn in the Confederate ranks. They never faltered, but closed up and moved on. The long line of Union rifles sent forth their rain of death. The ranks grew thin. But on they came. General Armistead, leading Pickett's advance, broke through Hancock's line and fell waving his hat on the point of his sword. A brief hand-to-hand struggle and the Union troops dashed forward to capture prisoners. Pickett sounded the retreat and "high tide" at Gettysburg had been reached. Lee's army was defeated and slowly retreated across the Potomac without further fighting.

**498. Negro Rule in the South.** In most of the reconstructed states a majority of the members of the legislature were, at one time, negroes. They were a strange body of men to make laws for states so injured by war. Some were intelligent because they had been trusted servants of their masters, while others were ignorant, having spent their lives toiling in cotton and rice fields.

Some were well dressed, but many wore second-hand clothes, "glossy and threadbare." A few were clad in the coarse dress of field hands. All were ignorant of public business.

How changed the scene to the old planters who, in the same halls, had heard the voices of Hayne and Calhoun, or of Toombs and Stephens! Now, if a white member rose to speak, he must address a former slave sitting in the Speaker's chair. If he offered a resolution, he must hear it read to the legislature by the negro clerk. If he served on an important committee, its chairman and a majority of its members were negroes.

While the legislature was debating a bill to raise or to spend money, the greatest excitement would occur. Though the Speaker pounded his desk to keep order, many persons would be on their feet trying to speak at the same time. The noise of loud talking, and even laughing, went right on. Some members leaned back with their feet on the desks, smoking cigars or eating peanuts, while those who were to profit by the bill were busy trying to buy votes for it.

**535. The Making of New Towns; Increase in Size of Farms.** Thousands of farmers moved into the new regions, carrying with them all their belongings, just as their fathers "moved west" earlier in our history. They made the same long journey by horse and wagon, camping by the wayside. Sometimes a number of "movers" traveled together into the wilder and more distant regions, for the Indians did not always look with favor upon this new wave of immigration.

On the broad prairies, with only boundless fields of waving grass and flowers in sight, the settler marked out his claim and began making a home. Very often he had first to build a sod house, or "dug-out," for his family,

and stake out his horses and cattle until he could provide temporary shelter. In time others settled near by. Then came a schoolhouse, a church, and a store. Into a corner of this store came a post office, and the people were once more in weekly communication with the old home. In a few years, if the location was favorable, the railroad came, and with it the telegraph and the daily papers from the great city, now only a few hours, instead of weeks, away. The little neighborhood was then in touch with the whole world.

In the new prairie states there were farms such as had hardly been dreamed of before 1860. Wealthy men bought thousands of acres of the rich prairie land and began farming on a gigantic scale. Many teams of horses or oxen were plowing at once. After a few years came the steam plow. Instead of a few hundred acres of corn or wheat or other grain, there were vast fields of waving grain covering thousands of acres. Hundreds of men and horses and dozens of machines were needed to harvest a single farm. Within the last few years the harvester and thresher have been combined, and now, on some of the great farms, a huge, complex machine makes its way, driven by steam, through miles of standing grain, leaving behind it rows of threshed, measured, and bagged grain ready to be hauled to the market or to the mill.

**Word-Pictures.** Named from the way they are produced, we call the foregoing selections word-pictures. Their object is to create in imagination great and lasting pictures of the events described. If we fail in this our history work practically falls to the ground. The objection to filling a text-book with word-pictures is that the text becomes too large. Such a text must necessarily be large. But what if it is? Which do the pupils prefer—a smaller

text without word-pictures or a larger text with word-pictures? Try them out. Give them the two texts and let them test the matter by choosing which they will use. There can be no doubt which the pupils will choose. In the first place, the reading of Pickett's Charge at Gettysburg—as given above—will be far more interesting, and far easier because more interesting, than would be a three or four line account of the same event. Who would not rather read ten pages of the one than two of the other?

The great defect in the word-picture is that only important events are so treated. But it does not follow that only such events are to be so pictured. The event of secondary importance needs this treatment to prevent a "dry-as-dust" treatment. The first settlers of Virginia were not given to labor, even the laborers among them. Here is the reason: "They were in a new land in the midst of strange sights and sounds; about them were vast forests peopled with birds and beasts of unknown lands; a new race of men was here with strange manners and customs. What wonders their imaginations pictured! A few miles inland might be another nation like the Mexicans, or just over the mountains the Pacific Ocean; among the hills, mines like those of Peru; or deeper in the forests, streams whose sands were pure gold." (Mace's School History, p. 28.)

See how few words are required to make a word-picture of the gathering at Boston of soldiers to make a Continental army: "Troops were ordered from Pennsylvania and Maryland to make the army besieging Boston more 'continental.' Soon came the brave Daniel Morgan with his Virginia riflemen, in hunting-shirts, bearing Patrick Henry's famous words, 'Liberty or death.' Morgan saluted Washington and said, 'From the right

bank of the Potomac, General!' Washington dismounted and with tears in his eyes went along the ranks shaking hands in turn with each man. They were his own neighbors!" (Mace's School History, p. 160.)

Or how few are required to describe one of Jackson's celebrations: "Then the boats dropped down the river to New Orleans. The river near the city was filled with a fleet of steamboats packed with people. The housetops and the river banks were crowded. Visitors from far away were there. Distinguished men, committees with greetings from different states, veterans who had stood with Jackson when the British charged, all were present. The ringing of bells, the firing of cannon, and waves of human huzzas were overwhelming. For four days the celebration went on." (Mace's School History, p. 272.)

Again, the number of words is not large to picture the victory over Cervera's fleet:

"To avoid capture, Cervera's ships, one after another, under a full head of steam, dashed out of the harbor and tried to escape (July 3, 1898). Every American ship in sight gave chase. Every engine on every vessel was working its best to drive the vessel forward; dense clouds of black smoke poured from each smokestack; the great guns shook the vessels and filled the air with a deafening roar. A Spanish vessel, torn by shot and shell, caught fire and ran for the shore; a second ran up the white flag, but was found to be sinking; a third blew up. 'Don't cheer, boys; the poor fellows are dying,' said an American captain, and not a cheer was heard." (Mace's School History, p. 452.)

These events cannot rank in importance with those previously given, but, naturally of less importance, they require a smaller word-picture. Further, events that

take a still lower rank will have, on the whole, still less space devoted to their story. No teacher, who has not experienced the enthusiasm with which boys and girls work when using a text filled with word-pictures, can form any idea of the intense interest such a text awakens.

# HISTORY IN THE HIGH SCHOOL

## IMPROVING THE HISTORY COURSE

### Report of the Committee of Seven

**Nature of the Report.** Within the last ten or fifteen years history courses in the high school have undergone frequent changes. It is not necessary to go back further than the report made by a committee of the American Historical Association called the Committee of Seven. This report was published in 1901. The members of the committee sought information on the subject of teaching history from any available source in this country and in Europe. They reported in favor of dividing the history of the world into four great periods: Ancient History, down to 800 A.D., to be studied in the first year of the high school; Medieval and Modern European History, to be studied in the second year; English History for the third year, to be studied, not only as a review of European History, but also as a preparation for American History. In the fourth year American History and Government. The Committee favored the study of Government as a part of American History.

This report has furnished almost ideal conditions for historical study based on the logical method, the method in which the prime considerations are the relations in the subject matter itself. It is quite probable that for a long time to come, the older colleges will demand this for entrance. But the fundamental defect of the report lies in the fact that it failed to take into account the number of students lost to the high school by a curriculum that misses their interests. Not that the Committee of Seven was mostly to blame for this result. In truth, it was their

report of four years' work in history that was, probably, the one subject that has done most to hold boys and girls to the high school. History would have done vastly more had not other interests reduced it to three, and sometimes to two years, and even to none where history is made elective.

For a number of years this report was followed quite closely. But in the course of a few years a number of criticisms, based on experience or misconception of the purpose of the committee, were developed and discussed in various historical associations over the country. Finally, the American Association took up the questions raised and appointed the Committee of Five.

### Report of the Committee of Five

Two of the former committee were on this new one. This committee gathered information by sending out circulars, and studying the reports of the work of certain sectional associations. The report was discussed and finally adopted by the American Historical Association. It was published in 1911. Among the recommendations made was one modifying the earlier report of the Committee of Seven. The new report proposed: 1. Ancient History to about 800 A.D. with little emphasis given to the last 500 years. 2. English History briefly touching the relations of England to the ancient world. Then it proposed to take up the main lines of English development to 1760, touching, as far as possible, the main facts of American colonization. 3. Modern European History, touching later medieval life and the beginnings of the modern age, and giving a suitable treatment of English history since 1760. 4. American History and Government, setting aside some time for the separate study of government.

The newer ideas of what should be taught in history

are seen from a part of the report: "Many teachers have come to feel strongly that the study of the past should distinctly help in understanding the present. They believe that for a knowledge of present social and political conditions there is need of a reasonable familiarity with the great changes of the past century, and that history courses should be so arranged as to allow ample opportunity for the study of the development and progress of modern Europe. . . . In fact, probably many teachers would confess that their pupils know more of the Crusades than of the colonial expansion of Europe, and that Charlemagne and Peter the Hermit are more familiar figures than is Napoleon, or Cavour, or Bismarck. Such a condition cannot be justified."

### Report of the Committee on Social Studies

**The Origin of the Committee.** Something had to be done, and that quickly. The tragedy of education is the number of bright, able, and spirited boys and girls not entering the high schools or leaving before the second year is reached. How to save them to the high school is the problem. To meet the situation the National Education Association appointed a commission on the Reorganization of Secondary Education. One of the main subdivisions of the commission is the Committee on Social Studies, including history, civics, and economics. The Commission made a tentative report to the National Educational Association, July, 1913, which was printed in Bulletin 41, 1913, of United States Bureau of Education. The report was well received and the Commission continued.

**The Object of the Committee on Social Studies.** The report just mentioned says: "It is probable that the high school teachers of social studies have the best

opportunity ever offered to any social group to improve the citizenship of the land." To make good citizens is the purpose of all teaching in the public schools. But to give the student such a knowledge of his environment as will make him master of his civic rights and duties is the special aim of teaching history and civics.

To reach this object will make history more or less of a practical subject. The student will see where his knowledge turns up in the affairs of everyday life. He will really discover how present day institutions came to be what they are. Whenever or wherever he studies a point in history, in Egypt, Greece, Rome, England, or even in America, the point must be connected up with modern life. Otherwise, it may have only a curious, or perhaps an academic, interest for him, or no interest whatever. How much of history lacks this vital practical element?

**How This Connection May Be Worked Out.** The Egyptians had certain ideas about immortality and, therefore, certain customs of burial. The Greeks probably took these up and modified them. The Romans changed them still further, especially after the coming of Christ. The Roman Catholic Church made still greater changes. The Reformation introduced new conceptions of the soul after death and to-day the great variety of ideas on the subject shows the tremendous differentiation that has come since the days of old Egypt. It also shows how tenacious this idea has been in its continuity. How much interest is aroused when the student is put to working out this problem of the life-history of an idea! What sort of history is this? It is neither ancient, medieval, nor modern, but all three in one. It is the new kind of general history—the kind that socializes the student. It makes him feel that history has some meaning when he sees ancient ideas functioning in the present.

Not every idea in history lends itself to such treatment. Many facts have not preserved their continuity in so perfect a way, but seem to have lost it before modern life is reached.

There is still another relation, that of similarity. The reforms of Solon in Greece and of the Gracchi in Rome, the causes of Wat Tyler's Rebellion, the measures of Lloyd-George to-day in England, and the social justice idea of the Progressive Platform in the presidential campaign of 1912 bear striking resemblance to each other. While they cannot be connected by progressive evolution, they are highly suggestive in the lessons they teach. The Committee on Social Studies insists such similarities should be brought out, for in them the student will not only find his chief source of interest, but will feel the practical value of the subject he studies.

Likewise, many events whose continuity we may not be able to trace have valuable lessons growing out of their dissimilarity. By making note of their contrasts we may see their bearing on modern life. The terrible Thirty Years' War, the Puritan Revolution, The Revolution of 1688, the American Revolution, and finally, the French Revolution, present such striking contrasts with each other as to give the student some notion of what might have been avoided for the betterment of the people. This means when one of these upheavals is studied the rest should be made to yield up their particular points of contrast, to the end that the student may see the lesson or lessons they present.

### What the Final Report Will Probably Be

**Trying to Save Boys and Girls to the High School.** The Committee of Five took a great step forward when it suggested a modification of the high school course in

history so as to permit emphasis on modern history. This contribution of the committee to the newer view of history was most significant. But the Committee on Social Studies proposes to go further and cause the modern idea to permeate every part of history—to give every event or institution studied the modern touch. Many of the facts of the present reach far back into the past through a long line of evolution. How they came to be what they are, constitutes a real problem. This method of attack is taken for the primary purpose of trying to save boys and girls for the high school. It is believed that this new view of history will go a long way toward arousing and sustaining their interest in the problems that will one day confront them. They certainly cannot help but feel that history thus taught will be far more practical than formerly.

**The Committee's Recommendation.** The changes made in history, under the pressure of this ideal, are radical. The student's motive for attacking history is that he has run against something in his everyday life that challenges him to an investigation; he does not understand it. He may solve his problem and get his answer by tracing the idea from its beginnings in ancient times or in nearer-by history, to its embodiment in modern institutions. This view puts a new test upon the facts of history. Tried by this standard, some events assume a new significance. Others lose their meaning, or have a greatly reduced one. The committee, therefore, substantially makes the following recommendation (1913): 1. European History to 1600 or 1700, including American Colonial History. 2. European History since 1600 or 1700, including contemporary civilization. 3. United States History since 1700, including current events. 4. Economics and Civics, each half a year.

It must be apparent that the course in history recommended by the Committee of Seven is gone, and that the course suggested above is, in its solution of events and in the distribution of its emphasis, a very different course indeed. The old terminology will not fit the new situation. The new terms seem to designate history more as a unit. Whoever admits the necessity of making an effort to reach the boys and girls who leave school prematurely will have to admit that the plan suggested by this committee is the most sensible one for the purpose yet proposed.

## Practical Suggestions

### The First Year

**The Difficulty in the Way.** The principles involved in high school history teaching were sufficiently emphasized in the early part of this work. Here are a few more suggestions of a practical nature: The grammar school pupil just entering the high school is only three months removed from leading strings of the eighth grade. He is not yet a full fledged student. There has not been much gain in maturity in those three months. In fact, until the mental rust of vacation has been rubbed off, he will think but little better than in the latter part of the eighth year. It is hardly wise, therefore, to immerse him at once in a cold bath of strange things usually found in the text-book on ancient history.

A far better way is to spend a few days in making a survey of the conditions of present day ideas and institutions. The purpose of this is to set before the students the problems they are to solve. Take the family, as one of five fundamental institutions, with the social ideas clustering around it. What are the leading characteristics of an American family? Have these marks always

belonged to it? Where did they come from? What relations do husband and wife sustain to each other? Was there ever a time when these relations were different? How have they come about? How long have men and women been entering into marriage? How many ways of getting married? Was there ever another way? What influences help to hinder marriage? These questions are designed to arouse the students' curiosity as to the past out of which the family has come. Similarly each of the other institutions and their corresponding ideas ought to arouse their desire to know. If these questions do not so stir them, this review is a failure.

When we turn to the past, care should be taken not to load students with proper names culled from Egypt, Babylonia, Assyria, and so on. The same warning will apply to Greece, Rome and the middle ages, although in a less degree. The same is true of places and things. Their content is strange. The students have had but little experience on which they can draw, to construct pictures of these things. On their ability to make accurate pictures hangs the accuracy of their judgments. If nothing be said to them by the teacher, and if they catch no suggestion from the sketches in their text, they are just as likely to picture the Macedonian phalanx in open formation, with repeating rifles in hand, as to picture it in solid formation with only great lances for weapons, or, if not corrected they will, in imagination, dress a dignified Roman senator in a business suit instead of in a toga.

From his lack of apperceptive matter the teacher must select a text for his use that is not only light and easy but one with an abundance of word-pictures in it. In addition, this text should be richly illustrated to supply the dearth of apperceptive matter. Blue prints of every

sort of ancient, medieval and modern object should be used. If the museum of antiquities, or even of modern times, be nearby, frequent journeys to see "historical things" should be indulged in. Books of travel are to be used, in addition to works of supplementary reading. With all that both teacher and text may do, the student will fall short of picturing scenes correctly. Hence, the teacher must not expect too much in the way of conclusions drawn from picture work; and what other sort of conclusions are permanent? Any other kind even if given by the text, are a sort of statistics.

**The Teacher's Problem.** The work proposed by the Committee on Social Studies is far easier, because more interesting, for the student than is the traditional course. But for the teacher the work at present is far more difficult. The teacher's problem concerns itself with the selection of material, and, whether in the field of ancient, medieval or modern history it is a difficult task to select those topics which connect with the present day world. The difficulty lies in the fact that not all institutions or events move down in orderly succession to the present. Some come part way, others, from one cause or another, lose their identity; many have their continuity so broken that they are hard to follow, and some are lost sight of by textbook makers. This obstacle will be partly removed as authors and publishers get in line with the newer conception of history.

**Ample Freedom Permitted.** It is not the purpose of the Committee on Social Studies, judged by their report, to lay down hard and fast lines in the limits set to the different periods, or in the selection and emphasis given to subject-matter. The committee seems to be concerned about one thing only, namely, that each event, fact, or idea shall be given its modern interpretation. Otherwise,

the teacher is left free to indulge likes and dislikes arising out of the fact that some are better prepared to deal with old ideas while others find attraction in institutions of a later date. Each must be permitted to do his own work, consistent with the great purpose outlined in the newer history.

### THE SECOND YEAR'S WORK

**The Student's Problem.** With the opening of the second year's work, the student is capable of greater emphasis on the reflective side of the work. Besides, the conceptions are not so strange, and the newer aspect of history attracts him as he approaches the present. He hears in his own home, perhaps, conversations over the beginning of the English Church and Puritan offshoots that were and are represented by Congregationalists and Presbyterians, and the migration of the latter to America. Or perhaps he may have read about Frederick the Great, the First Napoleon, or Wellington and may have already made the comparison with Washington, Grant, or Lee. The shrewd teacher will welcome this knowledge, and stir others to similar activity.

**Continental and English History.** The report of the Committee on Social Studies designates European history since 1760 as the second year's work. European history naturally falls into Continental and English history. For the sake of unity of treatment the latter may be selected. Continental history must deal with several nations and, therefore, present several different lines of study instead of one. We may follow England to the Continent when her interests carry her there and may return when continental history, as a cause, connects with English history. It seems as reasonable to select English history as Continental, for the point of departure.

**The Relation between English and American History.** It must not be assumed that Continental history has no value to one whose chief concern is the mastery of American institutions. Much of European history is vitally connected with our own. The French Revolution was promoted by our own Jefferson, and our relations with France at that time were such that Washington's proclamation probably saved us from being embroiled. The Monroe Doctrine itself had its roots in European conditions growing out of the Napoleonic Wars. One of the biggest problems which the Wilson administration faced was the Panama tolls question, which concerns the commerce of all Europe. Since the United States became a "World Power" her international obligations have widened. Future history will probably deal more and more with European relations.

Notwithstanding these facts, one purpose of this second year's work is so to study English history that the student will have a better understanding of American institutions. English institutions were planted in the thirteen colonies, with the exception of New York, but when the English got hold of New Netherland she, too, gradually took on English political ideas. Social and industrial institutions in New York remained Dutch for a much longer time. For one hundred seventy-five years England governed the American colonies. Relations with England constituted an interesting problem down to the publication of the Monroe Doctrine.

### THE THIRD YEAR

**The Point of View.** In the work heretofore done, the modern end of the problems was often found in American history. But in the present study the greater number of problems lies wholly in American history. For

this reason, we may call this year's study American History Proper. But we must not forget that still many American problems have their origin in European history. The tendency toward the Continental Sunday came from Europe, and the spirit of intolerance common to colonial days was an English inheritance.

The student is better prepared than ever before for reflective work. He is intellectually stronger and has accumulated an abundance of experience upon which he may draw in the interpretation of American history. The work should be easier, but more interesting, because his mental plow runs deeper. The problems are attacked at shorter range, compared with the work of other years. Student and teacher, both, can follow out more easily the continuous development of ideas and institutions.

**The General Problems of American History.** The problems of American history are the problems of the growth and development of American institutions. There are five fundamental institutions. Some authors have proceeded on the assumption that there is but one,—government,—or at least have given the others but scant treatment. This is an erroneous method. It rests on the assumption that the purpose of history is to make politicians, instead of citizens.

When the colonies were founded the religious and industrial motives were uppermost in the minds of the settlers. This struggle gave temporary ascendancy to the problems of government,—politics. Long after the Revolution the questions of national import drew the attention of men, because of the spectacular in them. But during this time the other institutions were functioning, and now historians are recognizing that fact. The texts of the better class are bringing out these less obtrusive, but just as important, facts.

From 1816 to 1850 the people were giving active attention to each of the institutions. But from this time to 1865 politics seemed to have the upper hand. The real cause, however, was due to the conflict growing out of social and economical differences between the North and the South. Even the Reconstruction Period was not all political, and very few will contend that since that time American history has concerned itself with politics. How absurd seems the contention that "history is past politics."

### THE FOURTH YEAR

**Economics the First Half Year.** According to the plan of the Committee on Social Studies the first half of the year shall be devoted to the study of Economics. It is not the object here to proceed in a formal, logical way to develop this subject by definition, but rather to connect it, in a simple, non-technical manner, with the study of industrial history. Pushing back far enough in school experience, we come to the common field out of which arise the beginnings of history, economics, and civics. All along the way a line of study should be carried on, incidentally, it may be, till the high school is reached, which covers the simpler problems of community life. Such a study ties the student's interest to his own environment and at the same time prepares him for more efficient work in history, economics and civics.

When he reaches economics proper, in the fourth year of the high school, he moves right on with emphasis upon one phase of this institutional study—the industrial. His study now is still non-technical in the main, and has to do with the problems of production and consumption. These subjects are concrete and the places where production goes on should be visited by the students.

**Civics in Last Half Year.** Civics in the last year touches the student at his best, but it is not the intention of the Committee on Social Studies that a formal study shall be pursued—starting with a definition of government and the constitution. In fact, Civics, in a broad sense, is more than the study of government. It is the study of all common interests of the community. A community has interests in state and national affairs as in the more special affairs of the locality where the studying is done.

When the government, the church, the school, the industrial organization, or the family performs functions whose operations the student can see, and the individual renders service for one or many of these, which comes under the observation of the student, he has a fine field for the studying of the only civics that can be of much service to him. If he has worked in harmony with the spirit of the Committee on Social Studies, and, in fact, worked in unison with the constant teaching of this text, he has been rising to a higher and wider view of history, economics, and civics—from his earliest experience with the sensuous side of community life—till he finds this field beginning to differentiate into separately organized subjects.

# THE INDEX


Abolitionists, 45, 199, 206.
Adams, John, 140, 141, 144, 149, 160, 163–165, 169.
Adams, John Quincy, 62, 151, 152, 159, 161, 181, 182.
Alaska, purchase of, 209.
Alien and Sedition Laws, 142, 143.
America, Central, expedition against, 192; doctrine of "Manifest Destiny" and, 210.
American Anti-slavery Society, 182.
American Historical Association, reports of committees of, 279–281, 285.
American History, 278, 280; fundamental divisions of, 56, 57; general problems of, 290, 291; great names in, 241; institutions of Indian not part of, 78; organization of phases of, 75–212; picture side of, 254; relation between English and, 289; between European and, 249, 289, 290; in the third year of high school, 289–291.
American Party, 190.
American Revolution, see *Revolution.*
Analytic Process in the study of history, 57, 58.
Ancient History, 279, 280, 282, 283, 285, 286.
Annapolis Convention, 121.
Annexation, of Texas, 181; of Hawaii, 209.
Anniversaries, patriotic, as material for picture-making, 228–230.
Antietam (Sharpsburg), battle of, 201, 204.
Anti-Saloon League, 211.
Anti-Slavery Party, see *Liberty Party.*
Anti-Slavery Sentiment, 182; see also *Abolition, Emancipation, Garrison, Negro Slavery,* etc.
"Appeal to the People of South Carolina," 179.
Appomattox, Lee's surrender at, 205, 207.
Army, Confederate, 200; United States, 156; see also names of wars.
Articles of Confederation, see *Confederation.*
Assumption Bill, see *Funding and Assumption Bills.*
Atlanta, Sherman's Campaign against, 205.
Aurora, the, 141.
Authorities, value of historical, 47, 54.
Bachelors and Spinsters, 212.
Balance of Power, 148, 149, 174, 176.
Bancroft, George, 171.
Bank, United States, 41–43, 137, 155, 157, 166–168.
Banks, state, 168.
Baptist Church, 183.
Barnburners, 184.

Battles and Campaigns, interpretation of, 111; place in history, 109, 110.
Bell, John, 194.
Bible History, 218.
Biography, see *Historical Person.*
Boone, Daniel, 68, 247; story of as illustrating problem of oral story, 247.
Boston, massacre, 103; port bill, 103; siege of, 107; tea party, 100, 103, 106, 109.
Boston Tea Party, as illustrating story of the event, 257–261.
Brace method of history teaching, 57.
Bragg, General Braxton, 200, 201, 204, 205.
Breckinridge, John C., 194.
Brown, John, raid of, 193.
Bryan, William Jennings, 210.
Bryant, William Cullen, 161, 171.
Buell, General Don Carlos, 201, 204.
Bull Run (Manassas Junction), battles of, 201.
Bunker Hill, battle of, 107, 226.
Burke, Edmund, 106.
Burr's Conspiracy, 148.
Butler, General Benjamin F., 199.
Calhoun, John C., 40, 155, 157, 158, 177–179, 184–186.
California, 183, 188, 189; Asiatics in, 210; discovery of gold in, 185, 186.
Campaign of 1828, 163–165; of 1840, 169–171.
Campaign of 1840, The, a word-picture, 270, 271.
Campaign Songs, 170.
Campaigns, public interest in political, 162.
Canal (Erie), The, a word-picture, 269, 270.
Capital of the United States, establishment of, 136.
Capital and Labor, war between, 211.
Cass, General Lewis, 185.
Causes and effects in history, 14, 32–41.
Causes in history, positive and negative, 34; fundamental and particular, 35–39; transformation into purposes and means, 39–41.
Central America, expedition against, 192; and doctrine of "Manifest Destiny," 210.
Centralization of Rights and Opportunities in the South, 86–93; conclusion from study of, 91, 92; economical aspects of, 88, 89; general causes of the movement, 87, 88; how principle governed attitude of Southern colonists toward English authority, 92, 93; how principle worked in politics and religion, 90, 91; nature of an organizing idea, 86, 87; social and educational effects of, 89, 90.
Character, formation of noble primary aim of teaching, 228.
Characters, of history and myth, and the picture-making phase of history, 231, 232, 240–244; in the written story, 248.
Charleston Convention, meaning of, 193–195.

Chase, Salmon P., 187, 206.
Chatham, Lord, 106, 109.
Chattanooga, battle of, 205.
Chickamauga, battle of, 205.
Child, and the sense phase of history, 215.
Chronology, see *Time.*
Church, 215, 219, 220, 291; Baptist, 183; center for religious ideas, 18; and denationalization, 183; and French and Indian War, 21; Methodist, 183.
Cincinnati, Society of the, 106, 120.
Circular Letter, Massachusetts, 106.
Citizens, good, purpose of all teaching to make, 282.
Civics, study of local, 222; the teaching of, 284, 290, 291.
"Civil Rights" Bill, 208.
Civil War, campaigns of, 204–206; causes of, 38–40, 71, 179; events of, from the Proclamation of Emancipation to the close, 206–207; and the purchase of Louisiana, 149; and state sovereignty, 32, 38, 40, 127.
Clark, George Rogers, 68.
Clay, Henry, 40, 64, 155, 157, 164, 168, 170, 171, 176, 179, 183, 186, 187.
Clergy, southern, and slavery, 175.
Cleveland, Grover, 209, 211.
Climate, influence in history, 71, 76.
Clubs for Boys, 212.
Colonial History, American, 284.
Colonies, growth of Union in, 114.
Columbus, first voyage of, importance in American history, 77.
Columbus Day, celebration of, 229.
Commerce, 35–37, 114, 115, 120, 121, 140, 148, 152, 173, 174.
Commission Form of Government, 210.
Committee of Five, report of, 280, 281, 283.
Committee of Seven, report of, 278, 279, 284.
Committee on Social Studies, origin of, 281; object of, 281, 282; recommendations of, 284, 285; report of, 281–288, 291, 292; what final report of, will probably be, 283, 284.
Committee of Thirty-three, resolutions of, 197.
Committees of Correspondence, 102.
*Common Sense,* Paine's, 107.
"Compact" Theory of the Constitution, 178.
Comparison in history study, 53, 54, see also *Synthesis.*
Compromise of 1850, 186–188.
Concentration and Expansion, 53.
Confederacy, Southern, 40, 198, 200, 205–207, 209.
Confederation, 32 34, 100; Articles of, 37, 106, 112, 114–115, 120, 121, 125, 129; causes of decline of, 35–37; sovereignty of the states and Articles of, 115–118.
Congress, Continental, 15, 35, 37, 102, 103, 112, 114, 151; Stamp Act, 41, 42, 100, 103–106; United States, 120, 176, 199, 200, 210.
Conscription Law, 156.

"Consent of the Governed," governments based on, 107.
Consolidation and Expansion, period of, 209–212.
Consolidation in National Affairs, 56.
Constitution, efforts of Colonists to secure rights under British, 102.
Constitution of the United States, 16, 18, 34, 41, 100, 121, 125–129, 131, 133, 134, 136, 137, 142, 146, 147, 156, 160, 164, 174, 175, 178, 181, 191, 192, 195, 211, 291; amendments to, 207–209.
Constitutional Union Party, 194.
Content of History, continuity and differentiation in, 16, 17; form and, 11–14, 73; growth of history due to differences and conflict in, 14, 15, and interpretation of, 26, 27; resemblance in, as the basis of organization of history, 122.
Continental Army, formation of, a word-picture, 276.
Continental Congress, see *Congress.*
Continental History, 288, 289.
*Continentalist,* the, 120.
Continuity and Differentiation in History, 15–18, 20.
"Contraband of War," slaves as, 199.
Convention, Annapolis, 121; Charleston, 193–195; constitutional, 41, 106, 115, 119, 127, 176; Hartford, 32, 156; Nashville, 188.
Conventions, constitutional, 41, 115, 127; nominating, 167, 168; state, 122, 127.
Cooper, James Fenimore, 161, 171.
Coördination in History Study, basis of, 65; confers power to properly judge contemporaneous events, 74; educational value of, 72–74; effect as to knowledge, 73, 74; nature of, 65–72; period of growth of local institutions and, 81; and subordination, 27, 73; theoretical and practical need of, 65–67; see also *Selection.*
Corinth, battle of, 201.
Correspondence Causes, 212.
Cotton, 177, 198, 201.
Cotton Gin, invention of, 177.
Crittenden Compromise, 197.
Cuba, coveted by the South, 192; and American protection, 209.
Culture Influences of the school, 18.
Cumberland Road, 158, 159.
Dates, 70, 71.
Daughters of Liberty, society of, 29, 102.
Debt, national, 156, 157.
Declaration of Independence, 106, 108, 109, 112, 113; causes of, 113; the foundation of American institutions, 113; and the period of development of nationality, 128, 129; as related to Union on the basis of rights of man, 102, 107–109, 112–114, 125; as result of the Revolution, 126, 127.
Declaration of Rights, as related to Union against England, 102, 104, 105, 125.
Democracy, 191; its efforts at redress, 150–153; and foreign aggressions, 150–153; and foreign relations, 137–141; fusion of, with nationality working out its results, 162–172, 197; Jacksonian, 164, 166; Jeffersonian, 159; mutual approach of nationality

and, 146–162; origin of struggle between nationality and, in domestic questions, 133–137; struggle between nationality and, 131–173; triumph of, 143–146; the War (of 1812) as a factor in nationalizing democracy, 156–161.
Democratic Party, 33, 159, 160, 169, 176, 185, 190, 192, 202, 209.
Democratic Societies, 139.
Democrats, 65, 170, 181, 184–186, 188–193, 200, 206; Peace Democrats, 207; War Democrats, 195.
Denationalization, the church and, 183.
DeSoto, Ferdinand, 68; expedition of, as related to growth of institutions, 77.
Diagram Method of Teaching History, 57, 58.
Differences and Conflicts in Content, growth of history due to, 14, 15.
Differentiation, 27; influence in growth of institutions, 18–20; Laws of Continuity and, 15–17; and public opinion, 19; in relation to institutional life, 55; in religious thought, 83.
Diffusion of Rights and Privileges, 81–86.
Direct Taxation, and slavery, 173.
Discipline, teaching for, 227, 261.
Discoveries and Explorations, as non-American history, 78; not a coördinate phase of institutional life, 75; relation to period of growth of local institutions, 75–78; true connection and rank, 75–78.
Discoveries and Inventions, 210, 211.
Discovery of Gold in California, how it aided in sectionalizing the nation, 185–186.
District of Columbia, established, 182; slavery in, 200.
Division in history study, an analytic process, 57, 58; basis for, 55, 56; growth of institutional life should be basis for, 55–57; means to interpretation and disintegration, 27, 57; is opposite of Integration, 57; uses of, 54–57; see also *Differentiation.*
Divisions, fundamental, in American history, 56, 57; geographical, 56; see also *Division* and *Differentiation.*
Divorces, 212.
Domestic Questions, struggle between nationality and democracy originates over, 133–137.
Donelson, Fort, taken by Grant, 201.
Douglas, Stephen A., 189, 191–195.
Drake, Joseph Rodman, 161.
Dred Scott Decision, 190, 191.
Economics in High School, 284, 290, 291.
Education, 211; in the South, 212; as effected by centralization of rights and opportunities, 89, 90; in history, 17–18.
Educational Value of Interpretation, 50–65.
Effects, 33, 38–46; acts and ideas as, 14; causes and, 38–44; danger of reading purposes into, 44, 45; purpose and means, 39–46.
Eight Hour Day, 211.
Elections, and nationality, 131, 132.
Electoral College, 165.
Elements of History, 9–24.

Emancipation, 175, 198–201; 204–206; significance of proclamation of, 202–204.
Embargo Act, 151, 152, 153, 155, 156, 158.
Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 172.
Emigrant Aid Society, 189.
Emotional Results of Historical Interpretation, 59–61.
Emphasis, selection and, 67–69.
Ends, 39, 42–46, 111; immediate and remote, 43–46; see also *Effects* and *Purpose.*
England, and the Civil War, 201, 202.
English Explorations, importance of, in American history, 77.
English History, 279, 288; relation between, and American History, 289.
Englishmen, Rights of, 44, 105, 106, 108, 110, 123.
Environment, pupil's mastery of, 250, 282.
Epoch, see *Period.*
Era of Good Feeling, 159; significance of, 161, 162.
Era of National Pride, 171, 172.
Erroneous View of History, 11.
Established Order in Society, power of, 19.
Ethical Value of Interpretation, 61–63.
European-American History, sixth grade, 249–253, nature and purpose, 249, 250.
European History, 249–253, 279, 280, 287, 289, 290.
Event, created for particular end, 42; form of, 11, 41; nature of, 253, 254; purpose of is true cause, 41; story of the, 240, 241, 253–277.
Events, as active forces, 35; as causes and effects, 14; as factor producing changes, 28; and historical judgment, 58, 59; institutional life and, 28; interpretation of, 27–32, 255; the language of history, 28; means to solution of problem of history, 13; as molding public opinion, 28; nature of, 13, 14, 214, 216, 224, 225, 229, 231; organization of military, 109–112; organization of political, 112, 113; the outer form of history, 13; as physical fact in history, 13; as product of preceding movement, 28; sign of ideas and feelings, 28, 65; and time, 70–72; story of the real historical person and, 253.
Excise, 136, 137, 145, 156.
"Expansion," 209.
Explorations, Discoveries and, see *Discoveries and Explorations.*
Exponential Method of Teaching History, 57.
"Exposition," 178, 179.
Express Companies, and the Parcel Post, 211.
Extension, University, 212.
Fact, every historical, both cause and effect, 33, 34.
Factors Which Unite to Produce Historical Knowledge, 9.
Facts, and events, 31; integration and unification of, 50; as material of history, 9; as material presented for interpretation, 25, 36, 46–48, 214; mental, 12, 13; necessity of showing relations between, 31, 35–38.
Fairy Stories, 231, 232.

Fall of Andros, a word-picture, 261, 262.
Families, relationship between, 218, 219.
Family, 212, 215, 217, 218, 285, 286, 291; center for social customs, 18; effects of slavery on, 22, 88, 89; Puritan family in New England, 84.
Federalism, 171; see also *Federal Party*.
Federalists, 152, 154, 158–161, 169, 178; defeat of, 144; rapid development of anti-democratic sentiment among, 141–143.
First Continental Congress, The (1774), a word-picture, 263.
First Representative Assembly in America, The (1619), a word-picture, 261.
Flag Day, celebration of, 230.
Florida, Purchase of, 74.
Folklore, 231, 232.
Foreign Aggressions, 1803–1812, 149, 150–153.
Foreign Relations, and conflict between nationality and democracy, 137–141.
Form and Content of History, 11–14, 73.
Forms and Ceremonies, 145, 146.
Fountain of Youth, 76, 77.
France, and the Civil War, 201, 202.
Franklin, Benjamin, 66.
Free Soil Party, 184, 185, 190; platform, 176, 194; principles, 191; vote, 188.
Free Tolls, 211.
Frémont, John C., 190, 199, 206.
French and Indian War, effects of on institutions, 21; and religious toleration, 16, 21.
"French Party," 141.
Fugitive Slave Law, 188.
Fulton and the Steamboat, 159.
Fundamental Divisions in American History, 56, 57.
Fundamental Institutions in History, 17–19.
Funding and Assumption Bills, 135, 136, results of conflict over, 136.
Fusion of Nationality and Democracy, 162–172; in the campaign of 1840, 169–171; significance of Jackson's election, 163–165.
Gallatin, Albert, 157.
Garrison, William Lloyd, 182.
Gates, General Horatio, 62.
Genêt, "Citizen," 139.
*Genius of Universal Emancipation*, 182.
Geographical Division, 56.
Geography, in history, 33, 70; local, 217; sense, 215.
Gettysburg, battle of, 12, 13, 204, 205.
Gettysburg, battle of, significance of, 12, 13.
Gold, effect of discovery in California, 185, 186.
Government, center of political ideas, 17, 18; genesis of local, 80; growth of, as illustrating continuity and differentiation, 15, 16; and growth in political thought, 18; growth of representative, 15, 16; as an institution, 18, 20, 21, 218, 278, 289–291; in middle

colonies, 94; national, 42, 43, 119–122; in New England, 82–86; and slavery, 22, 23; in southern colonies, 90–93; union of the states by means of the, general, 113–127.
Government, study of, 279, 280.
"Government for White Men," 203.
Grant, Ulysses S., 201, 204, 205, 207.
Growth, of institutional life, 26, 53, 55; custom and, 18; of institutions, 18–20, 56, 71, 75–95.
Growth of History, 14, 15–17, 18, 19, 119, due to differences and conflicts in content, 14, 15; laws of continuity and differentiation in, 15–17.
Growth of Union, 96–127; division into organic parts, 101; organization of period as a whole, 99, 100; phases of, 101; result of proper study of, 124, 125; and the Revolution, 102, 106, 124; and the Stamp Act Congress, 104.
Grundy, Felix, 155.
Halleck, General Henry W., 161.
Hamilton, Alexander, measures of, 134–138, 140, 144, 149, 157.
Harper's Ferry, 201.
Harrison, William Henry, 169, 170.
Hartford Convention, 156; recommendations of, 32.
Hawaii, annexation of, 209.
Hayne, Robert Y., 178.
*Hegel*, Morris', and the Higher Aim, 45, 46.
Henry, Fort, taken by Grant, 201.
Henry, Patrick, 104, 106; student's judgment of, 64, 241.
*Herald*, New York, 172.
Hero, The Real, 237–241.
Hero Study, ethical value of, 241–244; great ethical qualities in, 244; how to preserve a balance in, 243, 244; nature of the problem, 242, 243; pioneer stories and, 241, 242, 247.
Higher Aim in History, The, 45, 46.
"Higher Law," Seward's, 187.
High School, History in, 279–292; First year, 285–288; second year, 288, 289; third year, 289–291; fourth year, 291, 292; report of Committee of Five, 280, 281; of Committee of Seven, 279, 280, 285; of Committee on Social Studies, 281–288, 291, 292; trying to save boys and girls to, 283–285.
"Historical Emphasis," 69.
Historical Person, the story of the real, 232, 233, 237–242, 253; outline of names, 237–240; in relation to events, 253.
"Historical Perspective," 69, 84.
History Teaching, elementary phases of, 213–223.
Holiday Season—Christmas and New Year's, celebration of, 229.
Holmes, Oliver Wendell, 171.
Hood, General John B., 205.
House-Divided-Against-Itself Speech, 191, 193.
Houston, Sam, 180.
Idea, life history of, 17, 23, 24, 282, 284.
Ideas, 17, 19, 28, 46, 65, 224, 225; see also *Thought and Feeling*.

Ideas of Form and Content in History, 11.
Imagination, 214–217, 224–226, 229, 231, 232, 237, 242, 248, 250, 253–256, 275.
Immigration, 172, 174, 197.
Implied Powers, doctrine of, 43, 160.
Income Tax, 211.
Independence, 107, 108, see also *Declaration of Independence.*
Independence Day, celebration of, 230.
Independent Treasury, 169; bill, 171.
Indian, North American, institutions of, not a part of American history, 78.
Indians, 158.
Indian Story, The, 235–237.
Industrial, consequences of French and Indian War, 21; differences and conflicts, 15; effects of Revolution, 126; effects of slavery, 22, 23; institutions, 18, 20, 71; life, 18; motives, 290; organization, 291; phase, 17; questions, 210, 211.
Industries, effect of Embargo on, 153.
Institutional Life, 28, 33, 55; contrasts between North and South, 71; discoveries and explorations in relation to, 75–79; growth of, 26, 51, 53, 55, 70; test of historical value, 68–70; and growth of union, 108; interpretation of phases of, 27, 32; local, 221; and nationality, 129, 130; organic unity of, 20–24; and period of growth of local institutions, 80; revolutions and evolution in, 34; slavery and, 22, 23; see also *Institutions.*
Institutions, 15, 17–24, 113, 212, 216, 217, 221–223, 284–292; centers of life, 18; conservatism and growth in, 19; Declaration of Independence foundation of American, 113; Indian not a part of American industrial, 18, 20, 71, 78; in middle colonies, 93–95; in New England, 81–86; period of growth of local, 75–95, 228; present day institutions and the teaching of history, 282; in primitive history, 18; in southern colonies, 22, 23, 86–93; see also *Institutional Life.*
Integration, 27, 50–58; division and, 57; simplifies historical knowledge through comparison, 54; a synthetic process, 53, 54; and unification, 50, 51.
Interest in History, how stimulated, 60, 61.
Internal Improvements, 148, 158, 159.
Internal Revenue Tax, 202.
Interpretation, content and, 27, 261; definition of, 27; division and, 27, 57; develops historical judgment, 57–59; of discovery and exploration, 76; educational value of, 50–65; emotional results of, 59–61; ethical value of, 61–63, 228; of events, 27–32, 255; forms of thought and sentiment as discovered in, 32–46; material presented for, 25, 36, 46–49, 214; nature and kinds, 27–32; of past in relation to present movements, 31, 32; of phases of institutional life, 27, 32; process of interpretation in organizing history, 27–65; and the text-book, 256.
Inter-State Commerce Commission, 211.
Inventions, 172.

Irving, Washington, 161, 171.
Jackson, Andrew, 163–171, 178–181; proclamation of, 179; rule of, 165–169; significance of his election, 163–165.
Jackson, Celebration in honor of, a word-picture, 277.
Jamestown, Founding of, as illustrating interpretation of events, 29; importance of original material regarding, 49.
Jay, John, 140.
Jefferson, Thomas, 137, 141–146, 149–151, 154, 155, 158, 164, 170, 175, 176, 178, 210; student's judgment of, 62.
Jeffersonian Doctrine, 196.
Johnson, Andrew, 200.
Johnston, General Joseph E., 205.
Judgment, events and, 58, 59; guidance of 62, 63; need of in selection, 66, 67; interpretation and historical, 57–59; in relation to present movements, 74, 221; relation between picture-making and, 224–226, 237, 238, 248, 250, 255, 260, 261.
Judiciary, national, 143, 145, 190, 191.
Kansas, struggle in, 189, 191.
Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 188, 192.
Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions, 32, 142, 143, 153, 156, 178.
Knights of the Golden Circle, 202.
Know Nothing Party, 190.
Labor Day, celebration of, 229.
LaFayette, Jean Paul, 62.
Landing of the Pilgrims, importance of grasping significance of, 11, 12.
Lee, General Charles, 62.
Lee, General Robert E., 200, 201, 205, 208.
Legend, 231, 232.
Lexington, battle of, 73, 100, 103, 106, 110–112; interpretation of, 110–112; and mechanical whole, 51; problem in study of, 110, 111; true cause of, 110.
*Liberator*, the, 182.
Liberty Party, 183.
Lincoln, Abraham, 23, 34, 170, 185, 191, 192, 194, 199–201, 206, 207.
Lincoln-Douglas Debates, 191, 192, 194, 272.
Lincoln-Douglas Debates and Their Effect, the, a word-picture, 272.
Lincoln's Birthday, celebration of, 220, 230.
Literature, American, 160, 161, 171, 172; history and, 231, 232.
Local Government, see *Government*.
Local Institutions, in middle colonies, 93–95; in New England, 81–86; origin and development of, organizing idea of period of exploration, 80; period of growth of, 75–79; in southern colonies, 86–93.
Logical Method in history study, 10; 213, 278.
Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth, 171.
Lookout Mountain, battle of, 205.
Louisiana, purchase of, 74, 147–149, 180.
Lundy, Benjamin, 182.
Madison, James, 155, 157, 158.
Maine, admission of, and slavery, 176.

Making of New Towns; Increase in Size of Farms, The, a word-picture, 274, 275.
"Manifest Destiny," Doctrine of, 184, 210.
Map, use of, 71, 72.
Marriage, 212, 286.
Marshall, John, 143, 160.
Massachusetts Circular Letter, 106.
Material, original, 47–49; for picture-making, 228–277; presented for interpretation, 25, 36, 46–49, 214; processes involved in organizing historical, 27–74; second-hand, 46, 47; selection of, 287; for the story of the event, 256–277.
McClellan, General George B., 201, 202, 207.
Meade, General George G., 204, 205.
Medieval and Modern European History, 279, 280.
Memorial Day, observance of, 230.
Memory, 11, 36, 224.
Method, brace, 57; diagram, 57, 58; exponential, 57; logical, 10, 213, 278; outline, 57, 58; psychological, 10 213; topical 57.
Methodist Church, 183.
Mexican War, motives and results of, 183–186.
Mexico, expeditions against, 192; and the doctrine of "Manifest Destiny," 210; and the Texan Revolution, 180; war with, 183–185.
Middle Colonies, attitude of, toward English Authority, 94; internal institutional growth, 93–95.
Military Events, viewed as means, 42, 111; organization of, 109–112.
Militia, 156.
Mind, and facts, 50, 51; immature, 213–217, 227; and mechanical whole, 52; and methods, 10; and the picture-making phase of history, 224, 226, 233, 242, 254; the transforming agent, 9; see also *Facts*.
Minimum Rate of Wages, 211.
Minute Men, 110.
Missionary Ridge, battle of, 205.
Mission Work in Cities, 211.
Missouri, admission of, and slavery, 40, 174–176, 181, 185, 186.
Missouri Compromise, 174, 189, 190.
Missouri Struggle, meaning of, 175, 176.
Modern Idea in History, 284.
Money, 168.
Monroe, James, 161.
Monroe Doctrine, 172, 209, 210, 289.
Moral Lessons, from historical biography, 241, 242, 244, 246.
Moral Survey Committees, 212.
Motives, see *Purposes*.
Movements, see *Progress* and *Institutions*.
Myth, Legend, Folklore, 231, 232.
Names, 171, 172; great names in American history, 62–65, 237–241; outline of, 237–240.
Napoleon, 150, 151.

Napoleonic Wars, 174, 289.
Nashville Convention, 188.
"National Aid to Education," 209.
National and State Holidays, 228–230; outline of the days, 229, 230.
National Bank, see *Bank, United States.*
National Banking System, 206.
National Education Association, report of committee of, 281–288, 291, 292.
National Government, see *Government.*
National Road, 148, 159.
National and State Holidays, celebration of, 227–230; the outline of the days, 229, 230.
Nationality, 118, 121; and democracy, struggle between, 131–172, 197; development of spirit of, 56; fusion of, and democracy working out its results, 162–172; institutional life and, 129, 130; mutual approach of and democracy, 146–162· period of the development of, 128, 208; revival of, in the North, 198, 199; sentiment of, 32; and slavery, 173–208.
Nationality and Slavery, struggle between, 1820–1870, 173–208.
National Sentiment, unconscious progress of, 131–133.
National Spirit, 53.
Naturalization Law, 142, 145.
Natural Rights, 106.
Naval militia, 151.
Navy, American, 155, 156.
Nebraska, 189; see also *Kansas-Nebraska Bill.*
Negro, 175; emancipation of, 202, 203; see also *Emancipation, Slavery,* etc.
"Negro emigration to the North," 203.
"Negro equality," 203.
Negro Rule in the South, a word-picture, 273, 274.
Neutrality, Proclamation of, during French Revolution, 138, 139.
New England, growth of local institutions in, 81–86; principle governing conduct of, toward English authority, 84–86, 91.
New Mexico, 188.
New Orleans, battle of, 201.
Newspapers, rise of, 172.
Night School, 212.
*Niles' Weekly Register,* 161.
Non-American History, 78.
Non-importation Act, 151.
Non-importation Societies, interpretation of formation of, 29–31; original material concerning, 49, and tax on tea, 44.
Non-importation and Non-exportation Societies, 44, 102.
Non-intercourse Act, 153.
*North American Review,* 161.
Nullification, 32, 40, 176, 178, 179, 181, 186, 188, 191.
Obligations of Contracts, 160.
Observation Work in History, material for, 217–221; nature of, 214–223; purpose, 215–217.

Occupation, 84, 215, 219.
"October States," 195.
Ohio, 185.
Oral and the Written Story, The; 246–249; the general problem of, 246.
Oral Story, 246–247; advantages of, 246, 247; the problem of, 247.
Ordinance of 1787, 185, 207.
Organic Historical Whole, 52, 53.
Organization, of events of Revolution, 109; facts and, 26, 27; fundamental processes in, 27; of historical material, 25–74; a mental, not a mechanical, process, 26; of military events, 109–112; of the period of development of nationality, 128–212; of the period of growth of local institutions, 75–95; of the period of growth of Union, 95–127; of political events, 112, 113; processes and material of, 25–74, 119–122.
Organization, party, 172.
Organizing Idea, 81, 102, 103, 108, 112; of the second half of the Revolution, 113–115; at work, 80, 81.
Organizing Principle of History, 26; in the concrete, 82–84.
Ostend "Manifesto," 192.
Outline Method of Teaching History, 57, 58.
Paine, Thomas, and national government, 107, 119, 120.
Palo Alto, battle of, 183.
Panama Canal, 209.
Parcel Post, 211.
Parents and Children, relationship between, 218.
Parties, 14, 18, 39, 40, 181; and slavery, 23; see also names of political parties.
Patriotic Anniversaries, as material for picture-making, 228–230.
Patriotism, study of history basis of, 61, 221.
Paulding, James Kirke, 161.
Paul Jones and His Great Sea Fight (1779), a word-picture, 265, 266.
Peace of the world, 210.
Peace Convention before Civil War, 197.
Peninsular Campaign, 202.
Percival, James Gates, 161.
Period, 78, 79, 80, 81, 94; see names of periods of American history.
Periods, Historical, 53, 69.
Person, story of, 240, 241.
Petition, struggle for right of, 40, 182.
Phases, see *Institutions* and *Institutional Life.*
Philippines, annexation of, 209.
Philosophy, 218
Physical and Picturable Facts in History, 13.
Physical Conditions, as influencing institutional life, 71, 76, 79.
Pickett's Charge, a word-picture, 273, 276.
Picture Making, Material for, 228–277; European-American history, sixth grade, 249–253; for the first three or four years—patriotic anniversaries, 228–230; hero study, 241–244; the Indian Story, 235–237; myth, legend, folklore, 231, 232; the oral and the

written story, 246–249; the real hero, 237–241; the story of the event, 253–261; the transitional story, 232–235; word-pictures to illustrate the story of the event taken from Mace's School History, 261–277.
Picture-making Phase of History, 216, 217, 224–277; ethical purpose of, 227, 228; general problem of, its nature and immediate purpose, 224, 225; material for picture-making, 228–277; relation between picture-making and the judgment, 224–226, 237, 238, 248, 250, 255, 260; remote purpose of, 226, 227.
Pictures of Events, 254, 255.
*Pilgrim Stories*, 233.
Pilgrims, see *Landing of the Pilgrims*.
Pioneer Stories, 241, 242, 247.
Pitt, William, see *Chatham*.
Play, 245, 246.
Playgrounds, 212.
Polar Expedition, 172.
Political events, organization of, 112, 113; ideas, 17, 18, 20, 21, 23; independence, 21; observation, 220; parties, 18; phase, 17, 20; see also *Government*, *Politics*, *Slavery*, names of parties, etc.
Political Ideas, 17, 18, 20, 21, 23; effects of French and Indian War, 21; of slavery, 23.
Political-industrial Phase, 20.
Political Science, 218.
Politics, 19, 22, 23, 290, 291; effects of slavery on, 22, 23; history not confined to, 19; how principle of centralization of rights and opportunities worked in, 90, 91.
Ponce de Leon, 76, 77.
Poor Whites, 22, 88, 89.
Popular Sovereignty, 191, 194.
Population, movement of, 174.
Porto Rico, transferred to the United States, 209.
Presbyterians, 183.
Present Day Problems, 210–212.
Primaries, state, 210; presidential, 210.
Problem of History, 13; character of, 9, 10; in content, 13.
Process, historical, 33; means must be viewed as taking part in, 42, 43.
Processes, coördination and subordination and, 27, 65–74; involved in organizing historical material, 27–74; interpretation and, 27–65.
Progress, and causes, 34; and institutions, 18, 19; and public sentiment, 34.
Prohibition, national, 211.
Property, protection of, by law, 219.
Protection, 158, 177, 178; see also *Tariff*.
Protestant church, 211.
Psychological Method in Teaching History, 10, 213.
Public Opinion, 19, 28, 110, 172; see also *Public Sentiment*.
Public Sentiment, 14, 18, 19, 57, 64, 65, 83, 115–121, 123, 138, 139, 151–153, 160, 166, 168, 176, 186, 201; abolished slavery, 18; and causes, 34; and events, 14, 28–31, 33; as preserved in

records, 47–49; progress and, 34; in relation to union against England, 102, 104, 109; and revolution, 115.
Quakers, and slavery, 175.
Railroad, 159; rates, 211; strike, 209.
Rebellion, Shay's, 106.
Recall, 210.
Reconstruction Period, 209, 290.
"Record" Idea of History, 11.
Records, as original material, 47–49; use of, 47–49; value of, 47–49.
Reference Works, importance of, 46, 47, 54.
Referendum, 210.
Reflective or Logical Phase of History, 255.
Reforms, and Interpretation, 31.
Rejoicing Over the Victory (1788), a word-picture, 267, 268.
Representation, and slavery, 173, 174.
Representative Government, growth of, as illustrating continuity and differentiation, 15, 16; and the Revolution, 15.
Republican Party, 153, 154, 184, 189–191, 206.
Republicans, 144, 152, 154, 158, 159, 161, 178, 191, 194, 197, 208; see also *Republican Party.*
Results, 34–36, 226; see also *Effects.*
Revolution, American, 12, 65, 71, 73, 101, 108–112, 122; battles and campaigns of, 109, 110; effects of, on institutions, 21, 22, 126; events leading up to, 100; interpretation of, 30, 31; organization of events of, 109; organizing idea of the second half of, 113–115; compared with period of growth of nationality, 128; period of, as related to growth of Union, 102, 106, 124; and representative government, 15; results of, 125–127.
Revolution, French, 31, 138, 139, 173; relation of, to American history, 289.
Revolutions, causes of, 34.
Richmond, McClellan's campaign against, 201.
Right of Petition, 40, 182.
Rights, Declaration of, as related to union against England, 102, 104, 105.
Rights and Privileges, diffusion of, in New England, 81–86; see also *Centralizing of Rights and Opportunities.*
Rights of Englishmen, 44, 105, 106, 108, 110, 116, 123.
Rights, of Man, 139; the Constitution and, 126, 127; the Declaration of Independence and, 112, 113; organization of political events and, 112; in relation to growth of Union, 106–110; natural, 106.
Roads, see *Cumberland* and *National.*
Rochester Speech by Seward, 192, 193.
Roosevelt, Theodore, and present day problems, 210.
Rosecrans, General William S., 204, 205.
Russia, and the Civil War, 202.
San Jacinto, battle of, 180.
Santa Anna, 180.
School, 291; center for educational and culture influences, 18; and French and Indian War, 21; and growth of educational ideas,

18, 19; New England public, 83, 84; and slavery, 22, 89, 90; in southern colonies, 22, 89, 90; study of, 219.
Scott, General Winfield, 170, 183.
Secession, 32, 40, 176, 181, 188, 199; significance of, 196, 197.
Secondary Education, Commission on Reorganization of, 280.
Sectionalization, growth of, 180–197; symptoms of the triumphs of, 192, 193; the process already begun, 180–183; see also *Mexican War*, *Kansas-Nebraska Bill*, *Dred-Scott Decision*, *Lincoln-Douglas Debates*, etc.
Sedition Laws, Alien and, 142, 143.
Selection, application of, 70–72; basis for, 68–70; and emphasis, 67–69; fundamental, 67; principle of, and judgment, 66, 67; results of the application of, 72; principle stated, 67, 68; see also *Coördination*.
Semi-Historical Stories, 232–235.
Sense Phase of History, 213–223; the general problem, logical and psychological method, 213, 214; how the problem changes, 213, 214; nature of observation work in history, 214–223.
Sensuous side of history, 224, 225, 229; see also *Sense Phase of History*.
Seventh and Eighth Grades, and the Picture-Making Phase of History, 253–255; the story of the event in, 253–277.
Seward, William H., 187, 192, 193, 209.
Shay's Rebellion, 106, 121.
Sherman, Roger; process of organizing period, 122, 123.
Sherman, General William T., 205.
Shiloh (Pittsburg Landing), battle of, 201.
Similarity and Dissimilarity in historical events, 283.
Sixth Grade, and the Picture-Making Phase of History, 249–253.
Slave, in the Civil War, 199, 200.
Slaveholder, 175.
Slavery, and centralization of rights and opportunities, 87–89; and the Bible, 175; and the Civil War, 38, 40; and commerce, 173, 174; and the Constitutional Convention, 173, 174; destruction of, and the triumph of the Nation, 197–208; development of conflict over, 173–180; digging it up by the roots, 207, 208; direct taxation and, 173; effects of, on family, 18; and foreign intervention, 203; government and, 22, 23; how the question forced its way to the front, 199–202; and institutional life, 22, 23, 87, 90, 172, 173; and the Louisiana Purchase, 149; nationality and, 173–208; nullifies the tariff, 176–179; and poor whites, 22, 88, 89; public sentiment abolished, 18; and the Quakers, 175; representation and, 173, 174; results of, 45; and the Revolution, 126; significance of its appeal to arms, 197, 198; social effects of, 22, 23, southern clergy and, 175; see also *Emancipation*, *Negro*, etc.
Slave-trade, 175, 193.
Smith, Captain John, writings of, 49.
Smuggling, 152.
Social, customs, 18; differences and conflicts, 15; effects of centralization of rights and opportunities on, 89, 90; forces, 212; life, 218; phase, 17, 20.

Social Studies, report of Committee on, see *Committee on Social Studies.*
Society of the Cincinnati, formation of, 106, 120.
Sons of Liberty, Society of, 29, 203.
South Carolina, 176, 178, 179, 185.
"South Carolina Exposition," 178.
*South Carolinian*, 181.
Southern Colonies, attitude of, toward English authority, 92, 93; centralization of rights and opportunities in, 86–93; institutional life in, 22, 23, 86–93; schools in, 22, 89, 90; slavery in, 22, 23, 87–90; see also *Slavery.*
Spain, war with, 209; treaty with, 209.
Speculation during Jackson's administration, 168.
Sprague, Charles, 161.
Springfield Speech of Lincoln, 192, 193.
Stamp Act, 29, 45, 103, 105, 156; Congress, 41, 42, 100, 103–106; and formation of non-importation societies, 31, riots, 109.
"Staple States," 178.
State Constitutions, and religious freedom, 16.
State Sovereignty, 32, 35, 37, 38, 40, 49, 115–118, 119, 134, 142, 143, 156, 164, 178, 196; see also *States' Rights.*
States, admission of, and slavery, 174, 175.
States' Rights, 118, 127.
Steamboats, 159.
Stephens, Alexander H., 186.
Stony Point, historical value of battle of, 73, 111.
Story, 172; of the event, 240, 241, 253–277; Indian, 235–237; the oral and the written, 246–249; semi-historical, 232–235; transitional, 232–235.
Story of the Event, 240, 241, 253–277; illustration and method of work, 257–261; material for, 256–277; objects of, 254, 255; story of the person before, 240, 241; word-pictures to illustrate, taken from Mace's School History, 261–277.
Story of the Person, before the story of the event, 240, 241; ethical value of hero study, 241–244.
Story Side of History, 225.
Story Teller, the teacher as, 244–246.
Subordination, 27, 73.
Suffrage, 172, 208; woman, 210.
Sumter, Fort, 198, 199.
*Sun*, New York, 172.
Sunday School, 215, 220.
Supreme Court, 160, 167, 190, 191, 192.
Synthesis, 53, 54, 57, 82.
Tariff, 134, 135, 155, 158, 176–179, 182, 186, 202, 211; slavery nullifies, 176–179.
Tax on Tea, 103.
Taylor, Zachary, 185.
Tea, party, Boston, 100, 103, 106; tax, immediate and remote ends of, 44, 103.
Teacher, as story teller, 244–246.

Technical Training, 211.
Texan Revolution, 180.
Texas, 181–183, 186; annexation of, 181; meaning of the movement for, 179, 180.
Text-books, 46, 48, 66, 67, 109, 111, 217, 256, 259, 260, 275–278, 285–287, 289.
Thanksgiving Day, celebration of, 229.
Thomas, General George H., 205.
Thought and Feeling, as cause and effect, 14; conscious and unconscious, 41; disparity of, between North and South, 40; and events, 65, 214, 215, 218, 219, 225, 226, 231–233; forms of, as discovered in interpretation, 30–46; growth of institutional, 53; and historical judgment, 58, 59; the inner essence of history, 13; as pictural facts of history, 13; and the picture-making phase of history, 254, 256, 259; in relation to battles and campaigns of the Revolution, 109, 111; in relation to Union, 101; and the story of the event, 254.
Thought and Sentiment, see *Thought and Feeling*.
Thoughts and Emotions, see *Thought and Feeling*.
Time, 51, 52; place in history, 70, 71; relatively unimportant, 51, 55, 56, 70, 72.
Tippecanoe, and the Harrison Campaign, 170.
Toleration in Religion, effects of French and Indian War on, 16, 21; effects of Revolution on, 16; as illustrating continuity and differentiation, 16; in New England, 83.
Toombs, Robert, 186.
Topical Method, 57.
Transitional Story, The, 232–235.
Transitions, 96.
Trent Affair, 201.
*Tribune*, New York, 172.
Truth, love of, from study of history, 61; subjective and objective, 54.
Tyler, John, 180.
Unification, Integration and, 50, 51.
Union, 186, 187; against England, 101–113, 116; on the basis of rights of Englishmen, 102–106; on the basis of rights of man, 106–109; on the basis of sovereignty of the nation, 118, 119; on the basis of sovereignty of the states, 115–118; and cause and effect, 34, 102; fidelity to, 29; growth of, 96–127; preservation of, 40, 176; spirit of, and the Revolution, 126; and the Stamp Act Congress, 103–106; of the states by means of the general government, 113–127; transmission from isolation to, 96, 97.
Union Against England, 101–113; organizes events from 1760 to 1783 into a series, 101–102; see also *Union*.
"Union" Meetings, 188.
United States History, 284; see also *American History*.
Universities, 211, 212.
Utah, 188.
Van Buren, Martin, 165, 169, 170, 180, 184.

Verbal Memory, 11.
Vicksburg, campaign around and siege of, 204, 205.
Victories on the Sea; The "Constitution" Captures the "Guerriere," a word-picture, 268, 269.
Victory at Trenton, The (1776), a word-picture, 264, 265.
Victory over Cervera's Fleet, a word-picture, 277.
Virginia, Settlement of, a word-picture, 276.
War, 13, 14; causes of, 34; Civil, causes of, 38–40, 71, 179; French and Indian, effects of, on institutions, 21; Revolution, effects of, on institutions, 21, 22; see also names of wars.
War for the Union, see *Civil War*.
War of 1812; causes of, 150, as a factor in nationalizing democracy, 156–161; opposition to, 156; as a product of the national spirit, 153–156.
"War Power," 207.
War With Mexico, 183–186.
War With Spain, 209.
Washington, George, 62, 64, 120, 121, 129, 138–140, 175, 210; administration of, and contest between nationality and democracy, 133–137; inauguration of, and spirit of nationality, 132, 133.
Washington Bids His Comrades Farewell, a word-picture, 266.
Washington Resigns and Retires to Mount Vernon, a word-picture, 266, 267.
Washington's Birthday, celebration of, 230.
Wealth, diffusion of, 172.
Webster, Daniel, 40, 166, 170, 178, 186, 187; student's judgment of, 62.
Webster, Noah, 120.
Webster-Hayne Debate (1830), 40, 178; a word-picture, 271, 272.
Webster's Dictionary, 172.
Western lands, cession of, 106, 120.
Western Movement, 158, 159.
Western States, 148, 154.
When the Great Ship Came to the Planter's Door, a word-picture, 263.
Whig, convention, 170; party, 65, 169, 170, 181, 183, 190; statesmen, 171.
Whiskey Rebellion, 137, 139.
White House, 170.
Whittier, John Greenleaf, 171.
Whole, organic historical, 52, 53; space-, 52; time-, 51, 52.
Wilmot Proviso, 184–186, 207.
Wilson, Woodrow, administration of, 210, 211; and present day problems, 210.
Word-Pictures, 275–278, 286.
"World Power," 288.
Writs of Assistance, 100, 103, 106.
Written Story, The, advantages of, 248, 249; compared with oral story, 246, 247; problems of, 248.

9, 11, 12, 16, 28, 33, 4, 63, 8, 214

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

DUE AUG - 8 '38

JAN 10 1938

JUL - 7 '52

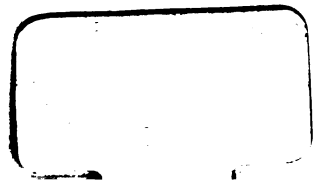
MAR 2 '62 H

APR 22 '63 H

JUN 12 '63 H

CANCELLED

NOV 24 1962 H



H 4538.97
Method in history for teachers and
Widener Library 005894577
3 2044 088 066 055